

Exantas Capital Corp.
Form 10-Q
August 08, 2018

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-Q
(Mark One)

QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the quarterly period ended June 30, 2018

OR
 TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from _____ to _____

Commission File Number: 1-32733

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Maryland 20-2287134

(State or other jurisdiction of (I.R.S. Employer
incorporation or organization) Identification No.)

717 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10022

(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip
Code)

(212) 621-3210

(Registrant's telephone number, including area
code)

Resource Capital Corp.

(Former name, former address and former fiscal
year, if changed since last report)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) Smaller reporting company

Emerging growth company

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. "

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). "
Yes No

The number of outstanding shares of the registrant's common stock on August 3, 2018 was 31,657,420 shares.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
INDEX TO QUARTERLY REPORT
ON FORM 10-Q

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| PART I | |
| Item 1: Financial Statements | |
| Consolidated Balance Sheets - June 30, 2018 (unaudited) and December 31, 2017 | 3 |
| Consolidated Statements of Operations (unaudited) Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 | 5 |
| Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) (unaudited) Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 | 7 |
| Consolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity (unaudited) Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | 8 |
| Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows (unaudited) Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 | 9 |
| Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements - June 30, 2018 (unaudited) | 11 |
| Item 2: Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations | 51 |
| Item 3: Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk | 91 |
| Item 4: Controls and Procedures | 92 |
| PART II | |
| Item 1: Legal Proceedings | 93 |
| Item 1A: Risk Factors | 95 |
| Item 6: Exhibits | 95 |
| SIGNATURES | 98 |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

PART I

ITEM 1. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

(in thousands, except share and per share data)

| | June 30, 2018 (unaudited) | December 31, 2017 |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| ASSETS ⁽¹⁾ | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$80,191 | \$ 181,490 |
| Restricted cash | 10,070 | 22,874 |
| Accrued interest receivable | 7,157 | 6,859 |
| CRE loans, net of allowances of \$4,529 and \$5,328 | 1,446,018 | 1,284,822 |
| Investment securities available-for-sale | 318,424 | 211,737 |
| Investment securities, trading | — | 178 |
| Loans held for sale | — | 13 |
| Principal paydowns receivable | — | 76,129 |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 1,782 | 12,051 |
| Derivatives, at fair value | 2,273 | 602 |
| Direct financing leases, net of allowances of \$735 | 66 | 151 |
| Other assets | 5,225 | 7,451 |
| Assets held for sale (amounts include \$18,000 and \$61,841 of legacy CRE loans held for sale in continuing operations, see Note 21) | 20,956 | 107,718 |
| Total assets | \$1,892,162 | \$ 1,912,075 |
| LIABILITIES ⁽²⁾ | | |
| Accounts payable and other liabilities | \$3,335 | \$ 5,153 |
| Management fee payable | 938 | 1,035 |
| Accrued interest payable | 4,736 | 4,387 |
| Borrowings | 1,319,646 | 1,163,485 |
| Distributions payable | 4,891 | 5,581 |
| Preferred stock redemption liability | — | 50,000 |
| Derivatives, at fair value | 67 | 76 |
| Accrued tax liability | 241 | 540 |
| Liabilities held for sale (see Note 21) | 2,421 | 10,342 |
| Total liabilities | 1,336,275 | 1,240,599 |
| STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY | | |
| Preferred stock, par value \$0.001: 10,000,000 shares authorized 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, liquidation preference \$25.00 per share; 0 and 4,613,596 shares issued and outstanding | — | 5 |
| Preferred stock, par value \$0.001: 10,000,000 shares authorized 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, liquidation preference \$25.00 per share; 4,800,000 and 4,800,000 shares issued and outstanding | 5 | 5 |
| Common stock, par value \$0.001: 125,000,000 shares authorized; 31,657,420 and 31,429,892 shares issued and outstanding (including 427,591 and 483,073 unvested restricted shares) | 32 | 31 |
| Additional paid-in capital | 1,081,586 | 1,187,911 |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income | 3,216 | 1,297 |
| Distributions in excess of earnings | (528,952) | (517,773) |
| Total stockholders' equity | 555,887 | 671,476 |

| | | |
|--|-------------|--------------|
| TOTAL LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY | \$1,892,162 | \$ 1,912,075 |
|--|-------------|--------------|

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

3

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS - (Continued)
 (in thousands, except share and per share data)

| | June 30, 2018 | December 31, 2017 |
|--|------------------|----------------------|
| | (unaudited) | |
| (1) Assets of consolidated variable interest entities ("VIEs") included in total assets above: | | |
| Restricted cash | \$9,245 | \$ 20,846 |
| Accrued interest receivable | 2,738 | 3,347 |
| CRE loans, pledged as collateral and net of allowances of \$1,480 and \$1,330 | 1,012,900 | 603,110 |
| Loans held for sale | — | 13 |
| Principal paydowns receivable | — | 72,207 |
| Other assets | 276 | 73 |
| Total assets of consolidated VIEs | \$1,025,159 | \$ 699,596 |
| (2) Liabilities of consolidated VIEs included in total liabilities above: | | |
| Accounts payable and other liabilities | \$119 | \$ 96 |
| Accrued interest payable | 485 | 592 |
| Borrowings | 632,004 | 416,655 |
| Total liabilities of consolidated VIEs | \$632,608 | \$ 417,343 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS(in thousands, except share and per share data)
(unaudited)

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | |
|--|---|----------------|---|----------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| REVENUES | | | | |
| Interest income: | | | | |
| CRE loans | \$25,435 | \$21,841 | \$47,818 | \$43,374 |
| Securities | 4,205 | 1,329 | 7,661 | 3,637 |
| Other | 20 | 465 | 138 | 2,095 |
| Total interest income | 29,660 | 23,635 | 55,617 | 49,106 |
| Interest expense | 16,159 | 14,347 | 30,543 | 28,601 |
| Net interest income | 13,501 | 9,288 | 25,074 | 20,505 |
| Other revenue | 152 | 964 | 57 | 1,892 |
| Total revenues | 13,653 | 10,252 | 25,131 | 22,397 |
| OPERATING EXPENSES | | | | |
| Management fees | 2,812 | 2,638 | 5,625 | 5,318 |
| Equity compensation | 659 | 734 | 1,626 | 1,522 |
| General and administrative | 2,547 | 3,580 | 5,607 | 7,443 |
| Depreciation and amortization | 19 | 32 | 32 | 100 |
| Impairment losses | — | — | — | 177 |
| Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net | — | 131 | (799) | 1,130 |
| Total operating expenses | 6,037 | 7,115 | 12,091 | 15,690 |
| | 7,616 | 3,137 | 13,040 | 6,707 |
| OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE) | | | | |
| Equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities | 69 | (118) | (223) | 243 |
| Net realized and unrealized gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | 932 | 9,478 | 290 | 17,084 |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities, trading | 58 | (50) | 53 | (961) |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | 9 | 79 | (4,656) | 58 |
| Other income | 506 | 17 | 517 | 85 |
| Total other income (expense) | 1,574 | 9,406 | (4,019) | 16,509 |
| INCOME FROM CONTINUING OPERATIONS BEFORE TAXES | | | | |
| Income tax (expense) benefit | (1) | 25 | 31 | (1,474) |
| NET INCOME FROM CONTINUING OPERATIONS | 9,189 | 12,568 | 9,052 | 21,742 |
| NET LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS, NET OF TAX | (450) | (4,184) | (203) | (4,745) |
| NET INCOME | 8,739 | 8,384 | 8,849 | 16,997 |
| Net income allocated to preferred shares | (2,587) | (6,015) | (7,797) | (12,029) |
| Consideration paid in excess of carrying value of preferred shares | — | — | (7,482) | — |
| Net loss allocable to non-controlling interest, net of taxes | — | 95 | — | 196 |
| NET INCOME (LOSS) ALLOCABLE TO COMMON SHARES | \$6,152 | \$2,464 | \$(6,430) | \$5,164 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

5

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS - (Continued)
(in thousands, except share and per share data)
(unaudited)

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|---|---|------------|---|------------|
| NET INCOME (LOSS) PER COMMON SHARE - BASIC: | | | | |
| CONTINUING OPERATIONS | \$0.21 | \$ 0.22 | \$(0.20) | \$ 0.32 |
| DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS | \$(0.01) | \$(0.14) | \$(0.01) | \$(0.15) |
| TOTAL NET INCOME (LOSS) PER COMMON SHARE - BASIC | \$0.20 | \$ 0.08 | \$(0.21) | \$ 0.17 |
| NET INCOME (LOSS) PER COMMON SHARE - DILUTED: | | | | |
| CONTINUING OPERATIONS | \$0.21 | \$ 0.22 | \$(0.20) | \$ 0.32 |
| DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS | \$(0.01) | \$(0.14) | \$(0.01) | \$(0.15) |
| TOTAL NET INCOME (LOSS) PER COMMON SHARE - DILUTED | \$0.20 | \$ 0.08 | \$(0.21) | \$ 0.17 |
| WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF COMMON SHARES OUTSTANDING - BASIC | 31,215,598 | 30,820,442 | 31,163,830 | 30,786,527 |
| WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF COMMON SHARES OUTSTANDING - DILUTED | 31,402,010 | 30,020,926 | 31,163,830 | 30,967,840 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

6

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)

(in thousands)

(unaudited)

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | |
|--|---|----------|---|-----------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Net income | \$8,739 | \$8,384 | \$8,849 | \$16,997 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss): | | | | |
| Reclassification adjustments for realized (income) losses on investment securities available-for-sale included in net income | — | (1,179) | 217 | (1,179) |
| Unrealized gains (losses) on investment securities available-for-sale, net | 1,607 | (1,628) | 98 | (1,494) |
| Reclassification adjustments associated with unrealized losses from interest rate hedges included in net income | — | 75 | — | 93 |
| Unrealized gains on derivatives, net | 455 | — | 1,604 | — |
| Total other comprehensive (loss) income | 2,062 | (2,732) | 1,919 | (2,580) |
| Comprehensive income (loss) before allocation to non-controlling interests and preferred shares | 10,801 | 5,652 | 10,768 | 14,417 |
| Net income allocated to preferred shares | (2,587) | (6,015) | (7,797) | (12,029) |
| Consideration paid in excess of carrying value of preferred shares | — | — | (7,482) | — |
| Net loss allocable to non-controlling interest | — | 95 | — | 196 |
| Comprehensive income (loss) allocable to common shares | \$8,214 | \$(268) | \$(4,511) | \$2,584 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

7

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY
FOR THE SIX MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

(in thousands, except share data)

(unaudited)

| | Common Stock Shares | Common Stock Amount | Series B Preferred Stock | Series C Preferred Stock | Additional Paid-In Capital | Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income | Retained Earnings | Distributions in Excess of Earnings | Total Stockholders' Equity |
|---|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| Balance, January 1, 2018 | 31,429,892 | \$ 31 | \$ 5 | \$ 5 | \$ 1,187,911 | \$ 1,297 | \$ — | \$(517,773) | \$ 671,476 |
| Stock-based compensation | 236,387 | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 1 |
| Amortization of stock-based compensation | — | — | — | — | 1,626 | — | — | — | 1,626 |
| Retirement of common stock | (7,134) | — | — | — | (70) | — | — | — | (70) |
| Forfeiture of unvested stock | (1,725) | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Net income | — | — | — | — | — | — | 8,849 | — | 8,849 |
| Distributions on preferred stock | — | — | — | — | — | — | (7,797) | — | (7,797) |
| Preferred stock redemption Securities | — | — | (5) | — | (107,881) | — | (7,482) | — | (115,368) |
| available-for-sale, fair value adjustment, net | — | — | — | — | — | 315 | — | — | 315 |
| Designated derivatives, fair value adjustment | — | — | — | — | — | 1,604 | — | — | 1,604 |
| Distributions on common stock | — | — | — | — | — | — | 6,430 | (11,179) | (4,749) |
| Balance, June 30, 2018 | 31,657,420 | \$ 32 | \$ — | \$ 5 | \$ 1,081,586 | \$ 3,216 | \$ — | \$(528,952) | \$ 555,887 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

(in thousands)

(unaudited)

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | |
|---|---|-----------|
| | 2018 | 2017 |
| CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES: | | |
| Net income | \$8,849 | \$16,997 |
| Net loss from discontinued operations, net of tax | 203 | 4,745 |
| Net income from continuing operations | 9,052 | 21,742 |
| Adjustments to reconcile net income from continuing operations to net cash provided by continuing operating activities: | | |
| (Recovery of) provision for loan and lease losses, net | (799) | 1,130 |
| Depreciation, amortization and accretion | 980 | 671 |
| Amortization of stock-based compensation | 1,626 | 1,522 |
| Sale of and principal payments on syndicated corporate loans held for sale | 60 | 1,076 |
| Sale of and principal payments on investment securities, trading, net | 241 | 4,493 |
| Net realized and unrealized (gain) loss on investment securities, trading | (53) | 961 |
| Net realized and unrealized gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | (290) | (17,084) |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | 4,656 | (58) |
| Impairment losses | — | 177 |
| Equity in losses (earnings) of unconsolidated entities | 223 | (243) |
| Return on investment from investments in unconsolidated entities | — | 6,292 |
| Changes in operating assets and liabilities | 6,035 | (590) |
| Net cash provided by continuing operating activities | 21,731 | 20,089 |
| Net cash provided by discontinued operating activities | 621 | 20,531 |
| Net cash provided by operating activities | 22,352 | 40,620 |
| CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES: | | |
| Origination and purchase of loans | (331,473) | (207,672) |
| Principal payments received on loans and leases | 277,275 | 267,714 |
| Proceeds from sale of loans | 12,000 | — |
| Purchase of investment securities available-for-sale | (113,855) | (14,598) |
| Principal payments on investment securities available-for-sale | 8,715 | 17,659 |
| Proceeds from sale of investment securities available-for-sale | 48 | 13,588 |
| Return of capital from investments in unconsolidated entities | 10,172 | 7,911 |
| Proceeds from the sale of an investment in an unconsolidated entity | — | 16,159 |
| Settlement of derivative instruments | (46) | (696) |
| Net cash (used in) provided by continuing investing activities | (137,164) | 100,065 |
| Net cash provided by discontinued investing activities | 27,557 | 2,621 |
| Net cash (used in) provided by investing activities | (109,607) | 102,686 |
| CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES: | | |
| Net proceeds from issuances of common stock and dividend reinvestment and stock purchase plan (net of offering costs of \$0 and \$31) | — | (31) |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | |
|---|-----------|-----------|
| Repurchase of common stock | — | (82) |
| Retirement of common stock | (69) | — |
| Repurchase of preferred stock | (165,340) | — |
| Net (repayments of) proceeds from repurchase agreements | (60,522) | 50,449 |
| Proceeds from borrowings: | | |
| Securitized | 397,452 | — |
| Payments on borrowings: | | |
| Securitized | (177,762) | (177,817) |
| Payment of debt issuance costs | (7,371) | (3) |
| Distributions paid on preferred stock | (10,082) | (12,029) |
| Distributions paid on common stock | (3,154) | (3,118) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

9

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS – (Continued)
 (in thousands)
 (unaudited)

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | |
|--|---|------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 |
| Net cash used in continuing financing activities | (26,848) | (142,631) |
| Net cash used in discontinued financing activities | — | (16,081) |
| Net cash used in financing activities | (26,848) | (158,712) |
| NET (DECREASE) INCREASE IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AND RESTRICTED CASH | (114,103) | (15,406) |
| CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AND RESTRICTED CASH AT BEGINNING OF PERIOD | 204,364 | 119,425 |
| CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AND RESTRICTED CASH AT END OF PERIOD | \$90,261 | \$104,019 |
| SUPPLEMENTAL DISCLOSURE: | | |
| Interest expense paid in cash | \$25,867 | \$25,139 |
| Income taxes paid in cash | \$— | \$515 |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

NOTE 1 - ORGANIZATION

Exantas Capital Corp., a Maryland corporation, and its subsidiaries (collectively, the "Company") (formerly known as Resource Capital Corp.) is a real estate investment trust ("REIT") that is primarily focused on originating, holding and managing commercial mortgage loans and commercial real estate-related debt investments. The Company is externally managed by Exantas Capital Manager Inc. (the "Manager") (formerly known as Resource Capital Manager, Inc.), which is an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of C-III Capital Partners LLC ("C-III"), a leading commercial real estate ("CRE") investment management and services company engaged in a broad range of activities. C-III is the beneficial owner of approximately 2.4% of the Company's outstanding common shares at June 30, 2018.

The Company has qualified, and expects to qualify in the current fiscal year, as a REIT.

In November 2016, the Company received approval from its board of directors (the "Board") to execute a strategic plan (the "Plan") to focus its strategy on CRE debt investments. The Plan contemplates disposing of certain loans underwritten prior to 2010 ("legacy CRE loans"), exiting underperforming non-core asset classes (residential real estate-related assets and commercial finance assets) and establishing a dividend policy based on sustainable earnings. As a result, the Company evaluated its residential mortgage and middle market lending segments' assets and liabilities and determined both met all of the criteria to be classified as held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. As a result of the reclassification, these segments are reported as discontinued operations and have been excluded from continuing operations. See Note 21 for further discussion.

The following subsidiaries are consolidated in the Company's financial statements:

RCC Real Estate, Inc. ("RCC Real Estate"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, holds CRE loans, CRE-related securities and historically has held direct investments in real estate. RCC Real Estate owns 100.0% of the equity of the following VIEs:

Resource Capital Corp. 2014-CRE2, Ltd. ("RCC 2014-CRE2") and Resource Capital Corp. 2015-CRE4, Ltd. ("RCC 2015-CRE4") were established to complete CRE securitization issuances secured by a portfolio of CRE loans. In August 2017 and July 2018, RCC 2014-CRE2 and RCC 2015-CRE4, respectively, were liquidated and, as a result, the remaining assets were returned to the Company in exchange for the Company's preference shares and equity notes in the securitizations.

Resource Capital Corp. 2015-CRE3, Ltd. ("RCC 2015-CRE3"), Resource Capital Corp. 2017-CRE5, Ltd. ("RCC 2017-CRE5") and Exantas Capital Corp. 2018-RSO6, Ltd. ("XAN 2018-RSO6") were each established to complete CRE securitization issuances secured by a separate portfolio of loans.

RCC Commercial, Inc. ("RCC Commercial"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, holds a 29.6% investment in NEW NP, LLC ("New NP, LLC"), which held one directly originated middle market loan at June 30, 2018 and historically held syndicated corporate loan investments. In July 2018 substantially all of the assets of the borrower for New NP, LLC's remaining loan were sold, resulting in repayment of the loan. New NP, LLC is reported in discontinued operations, see Note 21 for further discussion. RCC Commercial also owns 100.0% of Apidos CDO III, Ltd. ("Apidos CDO III"). Apidos CDO III, a taxable REIT subsidiary ("TRS"), was established to complete a collateralized debt obligation ("CDO") issuance secured by a portfolio of syndicated corporate loans and asset-backed securities ("ABS"). In June 2015, the Company liquidated Apidos CDO III and, as a result, substantially all of the assets were sold.

RCC Commercial II, Inc. ("Commercial II"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, historically invested in structured notes and subordinated notes of foreign, syndicated corporate loan collateralized loan obligation ("CLO") vehicles. Commercial II also owns equity in the following VIEs:

Commercial II owns 100.0% of the equity of Apidos Cinco CDO ("Apidos Cinco"), a TRS that was established to complete a CDO issuance secured by a portfolio of syndicated corporate loans, ABS and corporate bonds. In November 2016, the Company liquidated and sold substantially all of Apidos Cinco's assets. The remaining assets

were consolidated by the Company upon liquidation and are marked at fair value.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

11

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

Commercial II owns 68.3% of the equity of Whitney CLO I, Ltd., a TRS that holds residual assets following a September 2013 liquidation.

RCC Commercial III, Inc. ("Commercial III"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, historically held investments in syndicated corporate loan investments. Commercial III owns 90.0% of the equity of Apidos CDO I, LTD. ("Apidos CDO I").

Apidos CDO I, a TRS, was established to complete a CDO issuance secured by a portfolio of syndicated corporate loans and ABS. In October 2014, the Company liquidated Apidos CDO I and as a result substantially all of the assets were sold.

RSO EquityCo, LLC, a wholly-owned subsidiary, owns 10.0% of the equity of Apidos CDO I.

RCC Residential Portfolio, Inc. ("RCC Resi Portfolio"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, historically invested in residential mortgage-backed securities ("RMBS").

RCC Residential Portfolio TRS, Inc. ("RCC Resi TRS"), a wholly-owned TRS, was formed to hold strategic residential mortgage positions that could not be held by RCC Resi Portfolio. RCC Resi TRS also owns 100.0% of the equity, unless otherwise stated, in the following:

Primary Capital Mortgage, LLC ("PCM") (formerly known as Primary Capital Advisors, LLC), originated and serviced residential mortgage loans. In November 2016, PCM's operations were reclassified to discontinued operations. PCM sold its residential mortgage loan pipeline, its mortgage servicing rights and its remaining loans held for sale. See Note 21 for further discussion.

RCM Global Manager, LLC ("RCM Global Manager") owns 63.8% of RCM Global LLC ("RCM Global"). RCM Global, accounted for as an equity method investment, held a portfolio of investment securities available-for-sale.

Long Term Care Conversion Funding, LLC ("LTCC Funding") provided a financing facility to fund the acquisition of life settlement contracts.

Life Care Funding, LLC ("LCF") was established for the purpose of acquiring life settlement contracts. In July 2017, the Company purchased the balance of the outstanding membership interests of LCF, thereby becoming a single member LLC. In 2018, the remaining life settlement contracts matured or were sold.

RCC TRS, LLC ("RCC TRS") holds investments in direct financing leases and investment securities, trading. RCC TRS also owns equity in the following:

RCC TRS owns 100.0% of the equity of Resource TRS, LLC, which in turn holds a 25.8% investment in New NP, LLC, which is reported in discontinued operations.

RCC TRS owns 44.6% of the equity in New NP, LLC, which is reported in discontinued operations.

RCC TRS owns 80.2% of the equity in Pelium Capital Partners, L.P. ("Pelium Capital"). Pelium Capital, accounted for as an equity method investment, held investment securities, trading.

Resource Capital Asset Management, LLC ("RCAM") was entitled to collect senior, subordinated and incentive fees related to CLO issuers to which it provided management services through CVC Credit Partners, LLC ("CVC Credit Partners"), formerly Apidos Capital Management ("ACM"), a subsidiary of CVC Capital Partners SICAV-FIS, S.A. C-III sold its 24.0% interest in CVC Credit Partners in August 2017.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

NOTE 2 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") and the accounting policies set forth in Note 2 included in the Company's annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017. The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company, majority-owned or controlled subsidiaries and VIEs for which the Company is considered the primary beneficiary. All inter-company transactions and balances have been eliminated in consolidation.

Basis of Presentation

All adjustments necessary to present fairly the Company's financial position, results of operations and cash flows have been made.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand and all highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less at the time of purchase. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, approximately \$77.4 million and \$177.5 million, respectively, of the reported cash balances exceeded the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and Securities Investor Protection Corporation deposit insurance limits of \$250,000 per respective depository or brokerage institution. However, all of the Company's cash deposits are held at multiple, established financial institutions to minimize credit risk exposure.

Restricted cash includes required account balance minimums primarily for the Company's CRE CDO securitizations and cash held in the syndicated corporate loan CDOs.

The following table provides a reconciliation of cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash on the consolidated balance sheets to the total amount shown on the consolidated statements of cash flows (dollars in thousands):

| | June 30, | |
|---|----------|-----------|
| | 2018 | 2017 |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$80,191 | \$102,733 |
| Restricted cash | 10,070 | 1,286 |
| Total cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash shown on the Company's consolidated statements of cash flows | \$90,261 | \$104,019 |

Preferred Equity Investment

Preferred equity investments, which are subordinate to any loans but senior to common equity, depending on the investment's characteristics, may be accounted for as real estate, joint ventures or as mortgage loans. The Company's preferred equity investment is accounted for as a CRE loan held for investment, is carried at cost, net of unamortized loan fees and origination costs, and is included within CRE loans on the Company's consolidated balance sheets. The Company accretes or amortizes any discounts or premiums over the life of the related loan utilizing the effective interest method. Interest and fees are recognized as income subject to recoverability, which is substantiated by obtaining annual appraisals on the underlying property.

Discontinued Operations

The results of operations of a component or a group of components of the Company that either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale is reported in discontinued operations if the disposal represents a strategic shift that has or will have a major effect on the Company's operations and financial results.

Income Taxes

The Company established a full valuation allowance against its net deferred tax assets of approximately \$10.4 million at June 30, 2018 as the Company believes it is more likely than not that the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

This assessment was based on the Company's cumulative historical losses and uncertainties as to the amount of

taxable income that would be generated in future years by the Company's TRSs.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

13

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

Recent Accounting Standards

Accounting Standards Adopted in 2018

In May 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued guidance to clarify which changes to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award require an entity to apply modification accounting. Modification accounting should be applied unless all of the following three criteria are met: (i) the fair value of the modified award is the same as the fair value of the original award immediately before the original award is modified; (ii) the vesting conditions of the modified award are the same as the vesting conditions of the original award immediately before the original award is modified; (iii) the classification of the modified award as an equity instrument or a liability instrument is the same as the classification of the original award immediately before the original award is modified. Adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In January 2017, the FASB issued guidance to assist entities with evaluating whether transactions should be accounted for as acquisitions (or disposals) of assets or businesses. The guidance provides a screen to determine when an integrated set of assets and activities (a "set") is not a business. The screen requires that when substantially all of the fair value of the gross assets acquired (or disposed of) is concentrated in a single identifiable asset or a group of similar identifiable assets, the set is not a business. If the screen is not met, the guidance requires that: (i) to be considered a business, a set must include, at a minimum, an input and a substantive process that together significantly contribute to the ability to create an output and (ii) remove the evaluation of whether a market participant could replace missing elements. The guidance also narrows the definition of an output to: the result of inputs and processes applied to those inputs that provide goods or services to customers, investment income (such as dividends or interest), or other revenues. Adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In November 2016, the FASB issued guidance to reduce the diversity in practice of the classification and presentation of changes in restricted cash on the statement of cash flows. The guidance requires that a statement of cash flows explain the change during the period in the total of cash, cash equivalents and amounts generally described as restricted cash or restricted cash equivalents. Adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In August 2016, the FASB issued guidance to reduce the diversity in practice around the presentation and classification of certain cash receipts and cash payments in the statement of cash flows. The guidance addresses the following eight specific cash flow issues: (i) debt prepayments or extinguishment costs; (ii) contingent consideration payments made after a business combination; (iii) proceeds from the settlement of insurance claims; (iv) proceeds from the settlement of corporate-owned life insurance policies (including bank-owned life insurance policies); (v) settlement of zero-coupon debt instruments or other debt instruments with insignificant coupon rates; (vi) distributions received from equity method investees; (vii) beneficial interests in securitization transactions and (viii) separately identifiable cash flows and application of the predominance principle. Adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In January 2016, the FASB issued guidance to address certain aspects of the recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure of financial instruments in order to provide users of financial statements with more decision-useful information. The guidance requires equity investments to be measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in net income; simplifies the impairment assessment of equity investments without readily determinable fair values by requiring a qualitative assessment to identify impairment; eliminates the requirement for public business entities to disclose the method(s) and significant assumptions used to estimate the fair value that is required to be disclosed for financial instruments measured at amortized cost on the balance sheet; requires public business entities to use the exit price notion when measuring the fair value of financial instruments for disclosure purposes; requires an entity to present separately in other comprehensive income the portion of the total change in the fair value of a liability resulting from a change in the instrument-specific credit risk when the entity has elected to measure the

liability at fair value in accordance with the fair value option for financial instruments; requires separate presentation of financial assets and financial liabilities by measurement category and form of financial assets on the balance sheet or the accompanying notes to the financial statements, and clarifies that an entity should evaluate the need for a valuation allowance on a deferred tax asset related to available-for-sale securities in combination with the entity's other deferred tax assets. Adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

14

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

In May 2014, the FASB issued guidance that establishes key principles by which an entity determines the amount and timing of revenue recognized from customer contracts. At issuance, the guidance was effective for the first interim or annual period beginning after December 15, 2016. In August 2015, the FASB issued additional guidance that delayed the previous effective date by one year, resulting in the original guidance becoming effective for the first interim or annual period beginning after December 15, 2017. In 2016, the FASB issued multiple amendments to the accounting standard to provide further clarification. Exclusions from the scope of this guidance include revenues resulting from loans, investment securities available-for-sale, investment securities, trading, investments in unconsolidated entities and leases. The Company evaluated the applicability of this guidance, considering the scope exceptions, and determined that adoption did not have a material impact on its consolidated financial statements.

Accounting Standards to be Adopted in Future Periods

In June 2018, the FASB issued guidance to simplify the accounting for share-based payment transactions for acquiring goods and services from nonemployees by including these payments in the scope of the guidance for share-based payments to employees. The guidance is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within that reporting period. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is in the process of evaluating the impact of this new guidance.

In February 2018, the FASB issued guidance to allow a reclassification from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings for stranded tax effects resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. The guidance is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within that reporting period. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is in the process of evaluating the impact of this new guidance.

In August 2017, the FASB issued guidance to improve the financial reporting of hedging relationships to better portray the economic results of an entity's risk management activities. Additionally, the guidance simplifies the application of the hedge accounting guidance via certain targeted improvements. The guidance is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within that reporting period. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is in the process of evaluating the impact of this new guidance.

In January 2017, the FASB issued guidance to add the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") Staff Announcement "Disclosure of the Impact that Recently Issued Accounting Standards will have on the Financial Statements of a Registrant when such Standards are Adopted in a Future Period (in accordance with Staff Accounting Bulletin Topic 11.M)." The announcement applies to the May 2014 guidance on revenue recognition from contracts with customers, the February 2016 guidance on leases and the June 2016 guidance on how credit losses for most financial assets and certain other instruments that are measured at fair value through net income are determined. The announcement provides the SEC staff view that a registrant should evaluate certain recent accounting standards that have not yet been adopted to determine appropriate financial statement disclosures about the potential material effects of those recent accounting standards. If a registrant does not know or cannot reasonably estimate the impact that adoption of the recent accounting standards referenced in this announcement is expected to have on the financial statements, then the registrant should make a statement to that effect and consider the additional qualitative financial statement disclosures to assist the reader in assessing the significance of the impact that the recent accounting standards will have on the financial statements of the registrant when adopted. The Company completed its assessment under the new guidance on revenue recognition from contracts with customers, see "Account Standards Adopted in 2018." The Company is currently evaluating the impact of this guidance on leases and the measurement of credit losses on financial instruments and its impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued guidance which will change how credit losses for most financial assets and certain other instruments that are measured at fair value through net income are determined. The new guidance will replace the current incurred loss approach with an expected loss model for instruments measured at amortized cost. For available-for-sale debt securities, the guidance requires recording allowances rather than reducing the carrying

amount, as it is currently under the other-than-temporary impairment model. It also simplifies the accounting model for credit-impaired debt securities and loans. This guidance is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within that reporting period. Early adoption is permitted for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within that reporting period, with any adjustments reflected as of the beginning of the fiscal year of adoption. The Company is in the process of evaluating the impact of this new guidance.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

15

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

In February 2016, the FASB issued guidance requiring lessees to recognize a lease liability and a right-of-use asset for all leases. Lessor accounting will remain largely unchanged. The guidance will also require new qualitative and quantitative disclosures to help financial statement users better understand the timing, amount and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. This guidance will be effective for reporting periods beginning on or after December 15, 2018, with early adoption permitted. The Company is in the process of evaluating the impact of this new guidance.

Reclassifications

Certain reclassifications have been made to the 2017 consolidated financial statements to conform to the 2018 presentation.

NOTE 3 - VARIABLE INTEREST ENTITIES

The Company has evaluated its securities, loans, investments in unconsolidated entities, liabilities to subsidiary trusts issuing preferred securities (consisting of unsecured junior subordinated notes), securitizations, guarantees and other financial contracts in order to determine if they are variable interests in VIEs. The Company regularly monitors these legal interests and contracts and, to the extent it has determined that it has a variable interest, analyzes the related entity for potential consolidation.

Consolidated VIEs (the Company is the primary beneficiary)

Based on management's analysis, the Company is the primary beneficiary of eight and seven VIEs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively (collectively, the "Consolidated VIEs").

The Consolidated VIEs were formed on behalf of the Company to invest in real estate-related securities, commercial mortgage-backed securities ("CMBS"), syndicated corporate loans, corporate bonds and ABS and were financed by the issuance of debt securities. The Manager and C-III Asset Management LLC ("C3AM"), a subsidiary of C-III, manage the CRE-related entities, and CVC Credit Partners manages the commercial finance-related entities on behalf of the Company. By financing these assets with long-term borrowings through the issuance of debt securities, the Company seeks to generate attractive risk-adjusted equity returns and to match the term of its assets and liabilities. The primary beneficiary determination for each of these VIEs was made at each VIE's inception and is continually assessed.

For a discussion of the Company's consolidated securitizations see Note 1, and for a discussion of the debt issued through the securitizations see Note 10.

The Company has exposure to losses on its securitizations to the extent of its investments in the subordinated debt and preferred equity of each securitization. The Company is entitled to receive payments of principal and interest on the debt securities it holds and, to the extent revenues exceed debt service requirements and other expenses of the securitizations, distributions with respect to its preferred equity interests. As a result of consolidation, the debt and equity interests the Company holds in these securitizations have been eliminated, and the Company's consolidated balance sheets reflect the assets held, debt issued by the securitizations to third parties and any accrued payables to third parties. The Company's operating results and cash flows include the gross amounts related to the securitizations' assets and liabilities as opposed to the Company's net economic interests in the securitizations. Assets and liabilities related to the securitizations are disclosed, in the aggregate, on the Company's consolidated balance sheets.

Creditors of the Company's Consolidated VIEs have no recourse to the general credit of the Company, nor to each other. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company did not provide any financial support to any of its VIEs nor does it have any requirement to do so, although it may choose to do so in the future to maximize future cash flows on such investments by the Company. There are no explicit arrangements that obligate the Company to provide financial support to any of its Consolidated VIEs.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The following table shows the classification and carrying values of assets and liabilities of the Company's Consolidated VIEs at June 30, 2018 (in thousands):

| | CRE Securitizations | Other | Total |
|--|------------------------|--------|--------------|
| ASSETS | | | |
| Restricted cash | \$ 8,734 | \$ 511 | \$ 9,245 |
| Accrued interest receivable | 2,738 | — | 2,738 |
| CRE loans, pledged as collateral | 1,012,900 | — | 1,012,900 |
| Other assets | 267 | 9 | 276 |
| Total assets ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 1,024,639 | \$ 520 | \$ 1,025,159 |
| LIABILITIES | | | |
| Accounts payable and other liabilities | \$ 119 | \$ — | \$ 119 |
| Accrued interest payable | 485 | — | 485 |
| Borrowings | 632,004 | — | 632,004 |
| Total liabilities | \$ 632,608 | \$ — | \$ 632,608 |

(1) Assets of each of the Consolidated VIEs may only be used to settle the obligations of each respective VIE.

Unconsolidated VIEs (the Company is not the primary beneficiary, but has a variable interest)

Based on management's analysis, the Company is not the primary beneficiary of the VIEs discussed below since it does not have both (i) the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the VIE's economic performance and (ii) the obligation to absorb the losses of the VIE or the right to receive the benefits from the VIE, which could be significant to the VIE. Accordingly, the following VIEs are not consolidated in the Company's financial statements at June 30, 2018. The Company's maximum exposure to risk for each of these unconsolidated VIEs is set forth in the "Maximum Exposure to Loss" column in the table below.

Unsecured Junior Subordinated Debentures

The Company has a 100% interest in the common shares of Resource Capital Trust I ("RCT I") and RCC Trust II ("RCT II"), respectively, with a value of \$1.5 million in the aggregate, or 3% of each trust, at June 30, 2018. RCT I and RCT II were formed for the purposes of providing debt financing to the Company. The Company completed a qualitative analysis to determine whether or not it is the primary beneficiary of each of the trusts and determined that it was not the primary beneficiary of either trust because it does not have the power to direct the activities most significant to the trusts, which include the collection of principal and interest and protection of collateral through servicing rights. Accordingly, neither trust is consolidated into the Company's consolidated financial statements. The Company records its investments in RCT I and RCT II's common shares of \$774,000 each as investments in unconsolidated entities using the cost method, recording dividend income when declared by RCT I and RCT II. The trusts each hold subordinated debentures for which the Company is the obligor in the amount of \$25.8 million for each of RCT I and RCT II. The debentures were funded by the issuance of trust preferred securities of RCT I and RCT II. The Company will continuously reassess whether it is deemed to be the primary beneficiary of the trusts.

RCM Global

The Company, together with certain of Resource America, Inc.'s ("Resource America"), a wholly-owned subsidiary of C-III, subsidiaries, former employees and former employees' spouses, holds a membership interest in RCM Global, which formerly held a portfolio of available-for-sale securities. RCM Global was determined to be a VIE based on the majority equity interest holders' inability to direct the activities that are most significant to the entity. In January 2016, following adoption of the amendments to the consolidation guidance under which the Company concluded that it was not the primary beneficiary of RCM Global, the Company deconsolidated and began accounting for its investment as

an equity method investment in investments in unconsolidated entities on its consolidated financial statements. At June 30, 2018, the Company held a 63.8% interest in RCM Global, and the remainder was owned by subsidiaries and current and former employees of Resource America. The Company held an \$80,000 investment at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

17

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

Pelium Capital

The Company, together with a subsidiary of Resource America, holds a partnership interest in Pelium Capital, a specialized credit opportunity fund that formerly held a portfolio of investment securities. In January 2016, upon adoption of the amendments to the consolidation guidance under which the Company concluded that it had a variable interest and was not the primary beneficiary in Pelium Capital, the Company deconsolidated and accounted for its investment as an equity method investment in investments in unconsolidated entities on its consolidated financial statements. At June 30, 2018, the Company held an 80.2% interest in Pelium Capital, with a carrying value of \$154,000.

Wells Fargo Commercial Mortgage Trust 2017-C40

In October 2017, the Company purchased 95% of the Class E, F, G, H and J certificates of Wells Fargo Commercial Mortgage Trust 2017-C40 ("C40"), a B-piece investment in a Wells Fargo Commercial Mortgage Securities, Inc., private-label, \$705.4 million securitization. C3AM, a related party that is not under common control, is the special servicer of C40. The Company determined that although its investment in C40 represented a variable interest, its investment did not provide the Company with a controlling financial interest. The Company accounts for its various investments in C40 as investment securities available-for-sale on its consolidated financial statements.

Prospect Hackensack JV LLC

In March 2018, the Company invested \$19.2 million in the preferred equity of Prospect Hackensack JV LLC ("Prospect Hackensack"), a joint venture between the Company and an unrelated third party ("Managing Member"). Prospect Hackensack was formed for the purpose of acquiring and operating a multifamily CRE property. The Managing Member manages the daily operations of the property. The Company determined that although its investment in Prospect Hackensack represented a variable interest, its investment did not provide the Company with a controlling financial interest. The Company accounts for its investment in Prospect Hackensack's preferred equity as a CRE loan on its consolidated financial statements.

The following table shows the classification, carrying value and maximum exposure to loss with respect to the Company's unconsolidated VIEs at June 30, 2018 (in thousands):

| | Unsecured Junior Subordinated Debentures | RCM Global | Pelium Capital | C40 | Prospect Hackensack | Total | Maximum Exposure to Loss |
|---|---|---------------|-------------------|-----------|------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|
| ASSETS | | | | | | | |
| Accrued interest receivable | \$ 21 | \$ — | \$ — | \$167 | \$ — | \$188 | \$ — |
| CRE loans | — | — | — | — | 19,374 | 19,374 | \$ 19,374 |
| Investment securities available-for-sale ⁽¹⁾ | — | — | — | 21,113 | — | 21,113 | \$ 20,938 |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 1,548 | 80 | 154 | — | — | 1,782 | \$ 1,782 |
| Total assets | 1,569 | 80 | 154 | 21,280 | 19,374 | 42,457 | |
| LIABILITIES | | | | | | | |
| Accrued interest payable | 688 | — | — | — | — | 688 | N/A |
| Borrowings | 51,548 | — | — | — | — | 51,548 | N/A |
| Total liabilities | 52,236 | — | — | — | — | 52,236 | N/A |
| Net asset (liability) | \$ (50,667) | \$ 80 | \$ 154 | \$ 21,280 | \$ 19,374 | \$ (9,779) | N/A |

(1) The Company's investment in C40 is carried at fair value and its maximum exposure to loss is the amortized cost of the investment.

At June 30, 2018, there were no explicit arrangements or implicit variable interests that could require the Company to provide financial support to any of its unconsolidated VIEs.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

18

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 4 - SUPPLEMENTAL CASH FLOW INFORMATION

The following table summarizes the Company's supplemental disclosure of cash flow information (in thousands):

For the Six
 Months Ended
 June 30,
 2018 2017

Non-cash continuing financing activities include the following:

| | | |
|--|---------|---------|
| Distributions on common stock accrued but not paid | \$3,166 | \$1,567 |
| Distribution on preferred stock accrued but not paid | \$1,725 | \$4,010 |

NOTE 5 - LOANS

The following is a summary of the Company's loans (dollars in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| Description | Quantity | Principal | Unamortized (Discount) Premium, net ⁽¹⁾ | Amortized Cost | Allowance for Loan Losses | Carrying Value ⁽²⁾ | Contractual Interest Rates ⁽³⁾ | Maturity Dates ⁽⁴⁾⁽⁵⁾⁽⁶⁾ |
|--|----------|-----------------|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|--|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | | |
| CRE loans held for investment: | | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽⁷⁾⁽⁸⁾ | 78 | \$1,434,572 | \$ (7,916) | \$1,426,656 | \$ (4,529) | \$1,422,127 | 1M LIBOR plus 2.50% to 1M LIBOR plus 6.25% | July 2018 to July 2021 |
| Mezzanine loan Preferred equity investment (see Note 3) ⁽⁹⁾⁽¹⁰⁾ | 1 1 | 4,700 19,374 | — (183) | 4,700 19,191 | — — | 4,700 19,191 | 10.00% 11.50% | June 2028 April 2025 |
| Total CRE loans held for investment | | 1,458,646 | (8,099) | 1,450,547 | (4,529) | 1,446,018 | | |
| Total loans | | \$1,458,646 | \$ (8,099) | \$1,450,547 | \$ (4,529) | \$1,446,018 | | |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | | | |
| CRE loans held for investment: | | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽⁷⁾ | 70 | \$1,297,164 | \$ (7,014) | \$1,290,150 | \$ (5,328) | \$1,284,822 | 1M LIBOR plus 3.60% to 1M LIBOR plus 6.25% | February 2018 to January 2021 |
| Total CRE loans held for investment | | 1,297,164 | (7,014) | 1,290,150 | (5,328) | 1,284,822 | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----|-----|
| Syndicated corporate loans (11) | 2 | 13 | — | 13 | — | 13 | N/A | N/A |
| Total loans held for sale | | 13 | — | 13 | — | 13 | | |
| Total loans | | \$1,297,177 | \$ (7,014) | \$1,290,163 | \$ (5,328) | \$1,284,835 | | |

Amounts include unamortized loan origination fees of \$7.6 million and \$6.7 million and deferred amendment fees (1) of \$482,000 and \$268,000 being amortized over the life of the loans at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(2) Substantially all loans are pledged as collateral under various borrowings at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(3) LIBOR refers to the London Interbank Offered Rate.

(4) Maturity dates exclude contractual extension options, subject to the satisfaction of certain terms, that may be available to the borrowers.

(5) Maturity dates exclude one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(6) Maturity dates exclude one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, in maturity default and performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.

The loan was classified as an asset held for sale and in maturity default at December 31, 2017.

(7) Whole loans had \$88.7 million and \$84.1 million in unfunded loan commitments at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. These unfunded loan commitments are advanced as the borrowers formally request additional funding, as permitted under the loan agreement, and any necessary approvals have been obtained.

(8) At June 30, 2018, two legacy CRE loans with amortized costs of \$28.3 million were reclassified to whole loans from assets held for sale as it is now the Company's intent to hold these loans to maturity.

(9) The interest rate on the Company's preferred equity investment pays currently at 8.00%. The remaining interest is deferred until maturity.

(10) Beginning in April 2023, the Company has the right to unilaterally force the sale of the underlying property.

(11) All syndicated corporate loans are second lien loans and are accounted for under the fair value option.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The following is a summary of the contractual maturities, assuming full exercise of the extension options available to the borrowers, of the Company's CRE loans held for investment, at amortized cost (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| Description | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 and Thereafter | Total |
|-----------------------------------|------|------------|------------------------|-------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | \$ | -\$112,694 | \$1,295,446 | \$1,408,140 |
| Mezzanine loan | — | — | 4,700 | 4,700 |
| Preferred equity investment | — | — | 19,191 | 19,191 |
| Total CRE loans ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | \$ | -\$112,694 | \$1,319,337 | \$1,432,031 |

| Description | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 and Thereafter | Total |
|----------------------------|------|------------|------------------------|-------------|
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽¹⁾ | \$ | -\$148,622 | \$1,134,528 | \$1,283,150 |

⁽¹⁾ Excludes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

⁽²⁾ Excludes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, in maturity default and performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018. The loan was classified as an asset held for sale and in maturity default at December 31, 2017.

At June 30, 2018, approximately 31.2%, 24.0% and 13.1% of the Company's CRE loan portfolio was concentrated in the Southwest, Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively, based on carrying value, as defined by the National Council of Real Estate Investment Fiduciaries ("NCREIF"). At December 31, 2017, approximately 28.0%, 24.3%, and 12.5% of the Company's CRE loan portfolio was concentrated in the Southwest, Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively, based on carrying value.

Principal Paydowns Receivable

Principal paydowns receivable represents loan principal payments that have been received by the Company's servicers and trustees but have not been remitted to the Company. At June 30, 2018, the Company had no loan principal paydowns receivable. At December 31, 2017, the Company had \$75.9 million of loan principal paydowns receivable, all of which was received in cash by the Company in January 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 6 - FINANCING RECEIVABLES

The following tables show the activity in the allowance for loan and lease losses for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and year ended December 31, 2017 and the allowance for loan and lease losses and recorded investments in loans and leases at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

| | Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | | Year Ended December 31, 2017 | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Syndicated Corporate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses at beginning of period | \$5,328 | \$ 735 | \$6,063 | \$3,829 | \$ — | \$ 465 | \$4,294 |
| Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net | (799 |) — | (799 |) 1,499 | 3 | 270 | 1,772 |
| Loans charged-off | — | — | — | — | (3 |) — | (3 |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses at end of period | \$4,529 | \$ 735 | \$5,264 | \$5,328 | \$ — | \$ 735 | \$6,063 |
| | | | | | | | |
| | June 30, 2018 | | | December 31, 2017 | | | |
| | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Syndicated Corporate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses ending balance: | | | | | | | |
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$2,500 | \$ 735 | \$3,235 | \$2,500 | \$ — | \$ 735 | \$3,235 |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | \$2,029 | \$ — | \$2,029 | \$2,828 | \$ — | \$ — | \$2,828 |
| Loans acquired with deteriorated credit quality | \$— | \$ — | \$— | \$— | \$ — | \$ — | \$— |
| Loans and Leases: | | | | | | | |
| Amortized cost ending balance: | | | | | | | |
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$30,891 | \$ 801 | \$31,692 | \$7,000 | \$ — | \$ 886 | \$7,886 |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | \$1,419,656 | \$ — | \$1,419,656 | \$1,283,150 | \$ — | \$ — | \$1,283,150 |
| Loans acquired with deteriorated credit quality | \$— | \$ — | \$— | \$— | \$ — | \$ — | \$— |

Credit quality indicators

Commercial Real Estate Loans

CRE loans are collateralized by a diversified mix of real estate properties and are assessed for credit quality based on the collective evaluation of several factors, including but not limited to: collateral performance relative to underwritten plan, time since origination, current implied and/or reunderwritten loan-to-collateral value ratios, loan structure and exit plan. Depending on the loan's performance against these various factors, loans are rated on a scale from 1 to 5, with loans rated 1 representing loans with the highest credit quality and loans rated 5 representing loans

with lowest credit quality. The factors evaluated provide general criteria to monitor credit migration in the Company's loan portfolio, as such, a loan's rating may improve or worsen, depending on new information received.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

21

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The criteria set forth below should be used as general guidelines, and, therefore, not every loan will have all of the characteristics described in each category below. Loans that are performing according to their underwritten plans generally will not require an allowance for loan loss.

| Risk Rating | Risk Characteristics |
|-------------|--|
| 1 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance has surpassed underwritten expectations. • Occupancy is stabilized, the property has had a history of consistently high occupancy, and the property has a diverse and high quality tenant mix. |
| 2 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance is consistent with underwritten expectations and covenants and performance criteria are being met or exceeded. • Occupancy is stabilized, near stabilized or is on track with underwriting. |
| 3 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance lags behind underwritten expectations. • Occupancy is not stabilized and the property has some tenancy rollover. |
| 4 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance significantly lags behind underwritten expectations. Performance criteria and loan covenants have required occasional waivers. • Occupancy is not stabilized and the property has a large amount of tenancy rollover. |
| 5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance is significantly worse than underwritten expectations. The loan is not in compliance with loan covenants and performance criteria and is in default. Expected sale proceeds would not be sufficient to pay off the loan at maturity. • The property has material vacancy and significant rollover of remaining tenants. • An updated appraisal is required. |

All CRE loans are evaluated for any credit deterioration by debt asset management and certain finance personnel on at least a quarterly basis.

Whole loans are first individually evaluated for impairment; and to the extent not deemed impaired, a general reserve is established.

The allowance for loan loss is computed as (i) 1.5% of the aggregate face values of loans rated as a 3, plus (ii) 5.0% of the aggregate face values of loans rated as a 4, plus (iii) specific allowances measured and determined on loans individually evaluated, which are loans rated as a 5. While the overall risk rating is generally not the sole factor used in determining whether a loan is impaired, a loan with a higher overall risk rating would tend to have more adverse indicators of impairment, and therefore would be more likely to experience a credit loss.

The Company's mezzanine loan and preferred equity investment are evaluated individually for impairment.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

Credit risk profiles of CRE loans at amortized cost and legacy CRE loans held for sale at the lower of cost or fair value were as follows (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | Rating 1 | Rating 2 | Rating 3 (1) | Rating 4 | Rating 5 (2) | Held for Sale (3) | Total |
|---------------------------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 13,000 | \$ 1,271,509 | \$ 130,302 | \$ 4,845 | \$ 7,000 | \$— | \$ 1,426,656 |
| Mezzanine loan (4) | — | 4,700 | — | — | — | — | 4,700 |
| Preferred equity investment (4) | — | 19,191 | — | — | — | — | 19,191 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | — | — | — | 18,000 | 18,000 |
| | \$ 13,000 | \$ 1,295,400 | \$ 130,302 | \$ 4,845 | \$ 7,000 | \$ 18,000 | \$ 1,468,547 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 65,589 | \$ 1,040,883 | \$ 171,841 | \$ 4,837 | \$ 7,000 | \$— | \$ 1,290,150 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | — | — | — | 61,841 | 61,841 |
| | \$ 65,589 | \$ 1,040,883 | \$ 171,841 | \$ 4,837 | \$ 7,000 | \$ 61,841 | \$ 1,351,991 |

Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, that was in maturity default at June 30, 2018.

(1) The loan is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.

(2) Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, that was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(3) Includes one and two legacy CRE loans that were in default with total carrying values of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(4) The Company's mezzanine loan and preferred equity investment are evaluated individually for impairment.

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the Company had one CRE whole loan designated as an impaired loan with a risk rating of 5 due to short term vacancy/tenant concerns and a past due maturity of February 2017. The loan had an amortized cost of \$7.0 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. The Company obtained an appraisal of the collateral in 2016, indicating a fair value of \$4.5 million, which it relied upon as a practical expedient for determining the value of the loan at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. No additional provision was recorded on the loan for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. This loan was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

At June 30, 2018, the Company had one legacy CRE loan and one mezzanine loan included in assets held for sale with total carrying values of \$18.0 million, comprising total amortized cost bases of \$24.6 million less a valuation allowance of \$6.6 million. The mezzanine loan held for sale had no fair value at June 30, 2018.

At December 31, 2017, the Company had four legacy CRE loans and one mezzanine loan included in assets held for sale with total carrying values of \$61.8 million, comprising total amortized cost bases of \$63.8 million less a valuation allowance of \$1.9 million. The mezzanine loan held for sale had no fair value at December 31, 2017.

In June 2018, the Company sold the note and deed of trust of one legacy CRE loan for \$12.0 million, resulting in a realized gain of \$1.0 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

At June 30, 2018, the Company reclassified two legacy CRE loans back into the CRE loan portfolio at the lesser of each loan's cost or market value, totaling \$28.3 million, as the Company now intends to hold the loans to maturity. The loans are classified as CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets. One reclassified loan with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million was in maturity default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 and is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement.

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the one remaining legacy CRE loan had a carrying value of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million, respectively. An additional fair value adjustment of \$4.7 million, which included protective advances of \$172,000, to reduce the carrying value was recognized during the six months ended June 30, 2018. This adjustment was recorded based on the receipt of updated appraisals in April 2018 and was recognized in fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale on the Company's consolidated statements of operations. No valuation adjustments were recognized for the three months ended June 30, 2018, nor the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. The loan is currently in default.

At December 31, 2017, 45.8%, 36.4% and 17.8% of the Company's legacy CRE loans were concentrated in retail, hotel and office, respectively, based on carrying value. Of these loans, 82.2% and 17.8% were within the Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

23

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

Except as previously discussed, all of the Company's CRE loans, its mezzanine loan and its preferred equity investment were current with respect to contractual principal and interest at June 30, 2018.

Direct Financing Leases

The Company recorded no provision for lease losses against the value of its direct financing leases during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. The Company recorded a provision for lease losses of \$131,000 and \$270,000 during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively. The Company held \$66,000 and \$151,000 of direct financing leases, net of reserves, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Loan Portfolios Aging Analysis

The following table presents the CRE loan portfolio aging analysis as of the dates indicated at amortized cost and legacy CRE loans held for sale at the lower of cost or fair value (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | 30-59 Days | 60-89 Days | Greater than 90 Days (1)(2) | Total Past Due (3) | Current | Total Loans Receivable (4) | Total Loans > 90 Days and Accruing (2) |
|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$— | \$ — | -\$18,516 | \$18,516 | \$1,408,140 | \$1,426,656 | \$ 11,516 |
| Mezzanine loan | — | — | — | — | 4,700 | 4,700 | — |
| Preferred equity investment | — | — | — | — | 19,191 | 19,191 | — |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | 18,000 | 18,000 | — | 18,000 | — |
| Total loans | \$— | \$ — | -\$36,516 | \$36,516 | \$1,432,031 | \$1,468,547 | \$ 11,516 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$— | \$ — | -\$7,000 | \$7,000 | \$1,283,150 | \$1,290,150 | \$— |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | 11,516 | — | 11,000 | 22,516 | 39,325 | 61,841 | — |
| Total loans | \$11,516 | \$ — | -\$18,000 | \$29,516 | \$1,322,475 | \$1,351,991 | \$— |

(1) Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, that was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, that was in maturity default at June 30, 2018.

(2) The loan is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.

(3) Includes one and two legacy CRE loans held for sale that were in default with total carrying values of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(4) Excludes direct financing leases of \$66,000 and \$151,000, net of reserves, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

Impaired Loans

The following tables show impaired loans as of the dates indicated (in thousands):

| | Recorded Balance | Unpaid Principal Balance | Specific Allowance | Average Investment in Impaired Loans | Interest Income Recognized |
|---|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Loans without a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Loans with a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |
| Total: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | | |
|---|----------|----------|-------------|----------|------|
| Loans without a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Loans with a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |
| Total: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |

Troubled-Debt Restructurings ("TDR")

There were no TDRs for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

NOTE 7 - INVESTMENT SECURITIES, TRADING

Structured notes are CLO debt securities collateralized by syndicated corporate loans. The following table summarizes the Company's structured notes classified as investment securities, trading and carried at fair value (in thousands, except number of securities):

| | Number of Securities | Amortized Cost | Unrealized Gains | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Structured notes | 1 | \$ 1,000 | \$ | —\$(1,000) | \$ — |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | | |
|------------------|---|----------|----|-------------|--------|
| Structured notes | 4 | \$ 2,891 | \$ | —\$(2,713) | \$ 178 |
|------------------|---|----------|----|-------------|--------|

The Company did not sell any investment securities during the three months ended June 30, 2018 and two investment securities resulting in realized losses of \$5,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2018. The Company did not sell any investment securities during the three months ended June 30, 2017 and one investment security resulting in a realized gain of \$9,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2017.

The Company received payoff proceeds on one investment security resulting in a realized loss of \$3,000 during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 8 - INVESTMENT SECURITIES AVAILABLE-FOR-SALE

The following table summarizes the Company's investment securities available-for-sale, including those pledged as collateral. As of December 31, 2017, ABS may include, but are not limited to, the Company's investments in securities backed by syndicated corporate loans and other loan obligations. Investment securities available-for-sale are carried at fair value (in thousands, except amounts in the footnote):

| | Amortized Cost | Unrealized Gains | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value ⁽¹⁾ |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | |
| CMBS | \$ 317,414 | \$ 2,347 | \$ (1,337) | \$ 318,424 |
| Total | \$ 317,414 | \$ 2,347 | \$ (1,337) | \$ 318,424 |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|----------|-------------|------------|
| CMBS | \$ 210,806 | \$ 1,947 | \$ (1,174) | \$ 211,579 |
| ABS | 259 | — | (101) | 158 |
| Total | \$ 211,065 | \$ 1,947 | \$ (1,275) | \$ 211,737 |

⁽¹⁾ At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, \$255.2 million and \$169.6 million, respectively, of investment securities available-for-sale were pledged as collateral under related financings.

The following table summarizes the estimated payoff dates of the Company's investment securities available-for-sale according to their estimated weighted average life classifications (in thousands, except percentages):

| | June 30, 2018 | | | December 31, 2017 | | |
|---|----------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| | Amortized Cost | Fair Value | Weighted Average Coupon | Amortized Cost | Fair Value | Weighted Average Coupon |
| Less than one year ⁽¹⁾ | \$22,563 | \$22,237 | 5.32% | \$25,475 | \$25,275 | 5.55% |
| Greater than one year and less than five years | 172,565 | 173,646 | 5.04% | 126,273 | 127,104 | 4.65% |
| Greater than five years and less than ten years | 122,286 | 122,541 | 3.65% | 59,317 | 59,358 | 3.53% |
| Total | \$317,414 | \$318,424 | 4.52% | \$211,065 | \$211,737 | 4.45% |

⁽¹⁾ The Company expects that the payoff dates of these CMBS and ABS will either be extended or that the securities will be paid off in full.

At June 30, 2018, the contractual maturities of the CMBS investment securities available-for-sale range from June 2022 to November 2059.

The following table summarizes the fair value, gross unrealized losses and number of securities aggregated by investment category and the length of time that individual investment securities available-for-sale have been in a continuous unrealized loss position during the periods specified (in thousands, except number of securities):

| | Less than 12 Months | | | More than 12 Months | | | Total | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | Number of Securities | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | Number of Securities | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | Number of Securities |
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | | | |
| CMBS | \$39,979 | \$ (883) | 13 | \$4,072 | \$ (454) | 5 | \$44,051 | \$ (1,337) | 18 |
| Total temporarily impaired securities | \$39,979 | \$ (883) | 13 | \$4,072 | \$ (454) | 5 | \$44,051 | \$ (1,337) | 18 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|-----------|----|---------|-----------|---|----------|-------------|----|
| CMBS | \$49,016 | \$ (888) | 12 | \$1,308 | \$ (286) | 4 | \$50,324 | \$ (1,174) | 16 |
| ABS | 158 | (101) | 1 | — | — | — | 158 | (101) | 1 |
| Total temporarily impaired securities | \$49,174 | \$ (989) | 13 | \$1,308 | \$ (286) | 4 | \$50,482 | \$ (1,275) | 17 |

The unrealized losses in the above table are considered to be temporary impairments due to market factors and are not reflective of credit deterioration.

(Back to Index)

26

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The Company recognized no other-than-temporary impairments on its investment securities available-for-sale for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

The following table summarizes the Company's sales of investment securities available-for-sale (in thousands, except positions sold and redeemed):

| | For the Three Months Ended | | | | For the Six Months Ended | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|----------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| | Position Sold/Redeemed | Proceeds | Amortized Cost | Realized Gain (Loss) (1) | Position Sold/Redeemed | Proceeds | Amortized Cost | Realized Gain (Loss) (1) | Proceeds (2) |
| June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | | | |
| ABS | 0 \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | 2 \$ 411 | \$ 265 | \$(217) | \$ 48 | |
| CMBS | 0 — | — | — | — | 0 — | — | — | — | |
| Total | —\$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | 2 \$ 411 | \$ 265 | \$(217) | \$ 48 | |
| June 30, 2017: | | | | | | | | | |
| ABS | 2 \$ 9,605 | \$ 7,475 | \$ 1,792 | \$ 7,235 | 2 \$ 9,605 | \$ 7,475 | \$ 1,792 | \$ 7,235 | |
| Total | 2 \$ 9,605 | \$ 7,475 | \$ 1,792 | \$ 7,235 | 2 \$ 9,605 | \$ 7,475 | \$ 1,792 | \$ 7,235 | |

(1) The realized gains for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017 exclude foreign currency exchange losses that were hedged with foreign currency forward contracts.

(2) Includes unsettled proceeds of \$3.1 million, received in July 2017, from the sale of one ABS during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017.

NOTE 9 - INVESTMENTS IN UNCONSOLIDATED ENTITIES

The following table summarizes the Company's investments in unconsolidated entities at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 and equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| | Ownership % at June 30, 2018 | Investment at | | Equity in Earnings (Losses) of Unconsolidated Entities | | | |
|--|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | | June 30, 2018 | December 31, 2017 | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 |
| Pelium Capital (1) | 80.2% | \$ 154 | \$ 10,503 | \$ 75 | \$ 82 | \$(230) | \$(77) |
| RCM Global | 63.8% | 80 | — | (6) | (166) | 7 | (170) |
| RRE VIP Borrower, LLC (2) | —% | — | — | — | 37 | — | 37 |
| Pearlmark Mezzanine Realty Partners IV, L.P. (3) | —% | — | — | — | (193) | — | 165 |
| Investment in LCC Preferred Stock (4) | —% | — | — | — | 122 | — | 288 |
| Subtotal | | 234 | 10,503 | 69 | (118) | (223) | 243 |
| Investment in RCT I and II (5) | 3.0% | 1,548 | 1,548 | (806) | (663) | (1,530) | (1,300) |
| Total | | \$ 1,782 | \$ 12,051 | \$(737) | \$(781) | \$(1,753) | \$(1,057) |

(1) During the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, the Company received distributions of \$10.2 million and \$13.6 million, respectively, on its investment in Pelium Capital.

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

The Company sold its investment in RRE VIP Borrower in December 2014. Earnings for the three and six months (2) ended June 30, 2017 are related to insurance premium refunds with respect to the underlying sold properties in the portfolio.

(3) The Company sold its investment in Pearlmark Mezzanine Reality Partners IV, L.P. ("Pearlmark Mezz") in May 2017.

(4) The Company's investment in LEAF Commercial Capital, Inc. ("LCC") liquidated in July 2017 as a result of the sale of LCC.

(5) During the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, distributions from the trusts are recorded in interest expense on the Company's consolidated statements of operations as the investments are accounted for under the cost method.

During the six months ended June 30, 2018, investments held by Pelium Capital and RCM Global were substantially liquidated.

(Back to Index)

27

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

NOTE 10 - BORROWINGS

The Company historically has financed the acquisition of its investments, including investment securities and loans, through the use of secured and unsecured borrowings in the form of securitized notes, repurchase agreements, secured term facilities, warehouse facilities, convertible senior notes and trust preferred securities issuances. Certain information with respect to the Company's borrowings is summarized in the following table (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| | Principal Outstanding | Unamortized Issuance Costs and Discounts | Outstanding Borrowings | Weighted Average Borrowing Rate | Weighted Average Remaining Maturity | Value of Collateral |
|---|--------------------------|---|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | |
| RCC 2015-CRE3 Senior Notes | \$ 16,592 | \$ 142 | \$ 16,450 | 6.07% | 13.7 years | \$ 80,632 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 Senior Notes | 8,644 | 132 | 8,512 | 5.07% | 14.1 years | 97,827 |
| RCC 2017-CRE5 Senior Notes | 217,954 | 2,918 | 215,036 | 3.12% | 16.1 years | 336,734 |
| XAN 2018-RSO6 Senior Notes | 397,452 | 5,446 | 392,006 | 3.19% | 17.0 years | 514,225 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 51,548 | — | 51,548 | 6.28% | 18.2 years | — |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 143,750 | 15,107 | 128,643 | 4.50% | 4.1 years | — |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 70,453 | 425 | 70,028 | 6.00% | 154 days | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 21,182 | 352 | 20,830 | 8.00% | 1.5 years | — |
| CRE - term repurchase facilities ⁽¹⁾ | 160,755 | 1,968 | 158,787 | 4.34% | 43 days | 255,334 |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities ⁽²⁾ | 74,134 | 417 | 73,717 | 6.58% | 1.6 years | 207,901 |
| CMBS - short term repurchase agreements ⁽³⁾ | 184,089 | — | 184,089 | 3.48% | 48 days | 262,654 |
| Total | \$ 1,346,553 | \$ 26,907 | \$ 1,319,646 | 4.07% | 9.2 years | \$ 1,755,307 |
| | | Unamortized | | | | |
| | Principal Outstanding | Issuance Costs and Discounts | Outstanding Borrowings | Weighted Average Borrowing Rate | Weighted Average Remaining Maturity | Value of Collateral |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | |
| RCC 2015-CRE3 Senior Notes | \$ 85,788 | \$ 396 | \$ 85,392 | 4.50% | 14.2 years | \$ 149,828 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 Senior Notes | 90,883 | 407 | 90,476 | 3.65% | 14.6 years | 180,066 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | | | |
|--|--------------|-----------|--------------|-------|------------|--------------|
| RCC 2017-CRE5 Senior Notes | 244,280 | 3,493 | 240,787 | 2.51% | 16.6 years | 369,534 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 51,548 | — | 51,548 | 5.49% | 18.7 years | — |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 143,750 | 16,626 | 127,124 | 4.50% | 4.6 years | — |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 70,453 | 928 | 69,525 | 6.00% | 335 days | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 21,182 | 466 | 20,716 | 8.00% | 2.0 years | — |
| CRE - term repurchase facilities ⁽¹⁾ | 292,511 | 1,013 | 291,498 | 3.82% | 222 days | 432,125 |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities ⁽²⁾ | 76,714 | 570 | 76,144 | 5.97% | 2.1 years | 214,375 |
| CMBS - short term repurchase agreements ⁽³⁾ | 82,647 | — | 82,647 | 2.79% | 14 days | 131,522 |
| CMBS - term repurchase facilities ⁽⁴⁾ | 27,628 | — | 27,628 | 3.05% | 121 days | 38,060 |
| Total | \$ 1,187,384 | \$ 23,899 | \$ 1,163,485 | 4.00% | 7.3 years | \$ 1,515,510 |

(1) Principal outstanding includes accrued interest payable of \$276,000 and \$534,000 at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(2) Principal outstanding includes accrued interest payable of \$203,000 and \$203,000 at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(3) Principal outstanding includes accrued interest payable of \$672,000 and \$279,000 at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(4) Principal outstanding includes accrued interest payable of \$46,000 at December 31, 2017.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

Securizations

The following table sets forth certain information with respect to the Company's consolidated securitizations at June 30, 2018 (in thousands):

| Securitization | Closing Date | Maturity Date | End of Designated Principal Reinvestment Period ⁽¹⁾ | Total Note Paydowns Received from Closing Date through June 30, 2018 |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|--|--|
| RCC 2015-CRE3 | February 2015 | March 2032 | February 2017 | \$ 265,535 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 | August 2015 | August 2032 | September 2017 | \$ 215,091 |
| RCC 2017-CRE5 | July 2017 | July 2034 | July 2020 | \$ 33,495 |
| XAN 2018-RSO6 | June 2018 | June 2035 | December 2020 | \$ — |

The designated principal reinvestment period is the period where principal payments received by each respective securitization may be designated by the Company to purchase funding participations of existing collateral originally underwritten at the close of each securitization, which were or would be funded outside of the deal structure.

The investments held by the Company's securitizations collateralize the securitizations' borrowings and, as a result, are not available to the Company, its creditors, or stockholders. All senior notes of the securitizations held by the Company at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 are eliminated in consolidation.

RCC 2015-CRE3

In August 2018, a subsidiary of the Company initiated the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE3.

RCC 2015-CRE4

In July 2018, a subsidiary of the Company exercised the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE4, and all of the outstanding senior notes were paid off from the payoff proceeds of certain of the securitizations's assets.

XAN 2018-RSO6

In June 2018, the Company closed XAN 2018-RSO6, a \$514.2 million CRE securitization transaction that provided financing for transitional CRE loans. XAN 2018-RSO6 offered approximately \$405.0 million of senior notes, at par, to unrelated investors. A subsidiary of RCC Real Estate purchased 16.7% of the Class D senior notes and 100% of the Class E and Class F notes. In addition, a subsidiary of RCC Real Estate purchased an equity interest representing 100% of the outstanding preference shares. The Class E and Class F notes purchased by a subsidiary of RCC Real Estate are subordinated in right of payment to all other senior notes issued by XAN 2018-RSO6, but are senior in right of the payment to the preference shares. The equity interest is subordinated in right of payment to all other securities issued by XAN 2018-RSO6.

At closing, the senior notes issued to investors consisted of the following classes: (i) \$290.5 million of Class A notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 0.83%, increasing to 1.08% in May 2023; (ii) \$39.2 million of Class B notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 1.15%, increasing to 1.65% in July 2023; (iii) \$30.2 million of Class C notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 1.85%, increasing to 2.35% in July 2023; (iv) \$45.0 million of Class D notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 2.50%, increasing to 3.00% in September 2023; (v) \$18.0 million of Class E notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 4.00%; and (vi) \$21.9 million of Class F notes bearing interest at one-month LIBOR plus 5.00%.

All of the notes issued mature in June 2035, although the Company has the right to call the notes any time after July 2020 until maturity.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

29

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

Repurchase and Credit Facilities

Borrowings under the Company's repurchase agreements are guaranteed by the Company or one of its subsidiaries. The following table sets forth certain information with respect to the Company's repurchase agreements (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| | June 30, 2018 | | | Weighted Average Interest Rate | December 31, 2017 | | | Weighted Average Interest Rate |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| | Outstanding Borrowings (1) | Value of Collateral | Number of Positions as Collateral | | Outstanding Borrowings (1) | Value of Collateral | Number of Positions as Collateral | |
| CRE - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. (2) | \$92,621 | \$146,705 | 8 | 4.09% | \$179,347 | \$268,003 | 19 | 3.68% |
| Morgan Stanley Bank, N.A. (3) | 67,947 | 108,629 | 5 | 4.68% | 112,151 | 164,122 | 9 | 4.05% |
| Barclays Bank PLC (4) | (1,782) | — | — | —% | — | — | — | —% |
| CMBS - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. | — | — | — | —% | 12,272 | 14,984 | 8 | 2.45% |
| Deutsche Bank AG (7) | — | — | — | —% | 15,356 | 23,076 | 14 | 3.53% |
| Trust Certificates - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2015 (5) | 26,624 | 89,121 | 2 | 7.57% | 26,548 | 89,121 | 2 | 6.98% |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2017 (6) | 47,093 | 118,780 | 2 | 6.02% | 49,596 | 125,254 | 2 | 5.43% |
| CMBS - Short-Term Repurchase Agreements | | | | | | | | |
| RBC Capital Markets, LLC | 156,643 | 207,291 | 22 | 3.48% | 72,131 | 97,745 | 6 | 2.77% |
| JP Morgan Securities LLC | 13,780 | 38,231 | 5 | 3.48% | 10,516 | 33,777 | 2 | 2.93% |
| | 13,667 | 17,132 | 11 | 3.43% | — | — | — | —% |

Deutsche Bank
Securities Inc. ⁽⁷⁾

Total \$416,593 \$725,889 \$477,917 \$816,082

(1) Outstanding borrowings includes accrued interest payable.

(2) Includes \$59,000 and \$565,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(3) Includes \$127,000 and \$448,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(4) Includes \$1.8 million of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and no deferred debt issuance costs at December 31, 2017.

(5) Includes \$59,000 and \$133,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(6) Includes \$263,000 and \$320,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(7) In May 2018, the facility's term was rolled from a one-year basis, with extensions at the buyer's option, to a three-month basis. At June 30, 2018, the facility was reclassified from CMBS - term repurchase facilities to CMBS - short term repurchase agreements.

(Back to Index)

30

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The following table shows information about the amount at risk under the repurchase facilities at June 30, 2018 (in thousands, except percentages):

| | Amount at Risk (1) | Weighted Average Remaining Maturity | Weighted Average Interest Rate |
|---|--------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | |
| CRE - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | |
| Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. | \$54,677 | 21 days | 4.09% |
| Morgan Stanley Bank, N.A. | \$41,066 | 72 days | 4.68% |
| Trust Certificates - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2015 | \$62,515 | 143 days | 7.57% |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2017 | \$71,438 | 2.2 years | 6.02% |
| CMBS - Short-Term Repurchase Agreements | | | |
| RBC Capital Markets, LLC | \$51,135 | 48 days | 3.48% |
| JP Morgan Securities LLC | \$24,535 | 46 days | 3.48% |
| Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. | \$3,510 | 56 days | 3.43% |

(1) Equal to the total of the estimated fair value of securities or loans sold and accrued interest receivable, minus the total of the repurchase agreement liabilities and accrued interest payable.

The Company is in compliance with all covenants in each of the respective agreements at June 30, 2018.

CRE - Term Repurchase Facilities

In February 2012, a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement (the "2012 Facility") with Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. ("Wells Fargo") to finance the origination of CRE loans. In July 2018, the subsidiary entered into an amended and restated master repurchase agreement (the "2018 Facility"), in exchange for an extension fee and other reasonable costs, that maintained the \$400.0 million maximum facility amount and extended the term of the facility to July 2020 with three one-year extension options exercisable at the Company's discretion. The 2018 Facility charges interest rates of one-month LIBOR plus spreads from 1.75% to 2.50%.

The 2018 Facility, consistent with the 2012 Facility, contains customary events of default. The remedies for such events of default are also customary for this type of transaction and include the acceleration of all obligations of the Company to repay the purchase price for purchased assets.

The 2018 Facility, consistent with the 2012 Facility, also contains margin call provisions relating to a decline in the market value of a security. Under these circumstances, Wells Fargo may require the Company to transfer cash in an amount sufficient to eliminate any margin deficit resulting from such a decline.

Consistent with the guaranty agreement dated February 2012, the Company continues to guarantee the payment and performance of its subsidiaries' obligations to the lender through an amended and restated guaranty agreement dated in July 2018 (the "2018 Guaranty"), including all reasonable expenses that are incurred by the lender in connection with the enforcement of the 2018 Facility. The 2018 Guaranty includes covenants that, among other requirements, stipulate certain thresholds, including: required liquidity, required capital, total indebtedness to total equity, EBITDA to interest expense, and total indebtedness.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

Contractual maturity dates of the Company's borrowings' principal outstanding by category and year are presented in the table below at June 30, 2018 (in thousands):

| | Total | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | 2022 and Thereafter |
|--|-------------|-----------|------|-----------|------|------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | |
| CRE securitizations | \$640,642 | \$— | \$— | \$— | \$— | —\$640,642 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 51,548 | — | — | — | — | 51,548 |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 143,750 | — | — | — | — | 143,750 |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 70,453 | 70,453 | — | — | — | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 21,182 | — | — | 21,182 | — | — |
| Repurchase and credit facilities | 418,978 | 371,526 | — | 47,452 | — | — |
| Total | \$1,346,553 | \$441,979 | \$— | —\$68,634 | \$— | —\$835,940 |

NOTE 11 - SHARE ISSUANCE AND REPURCHASE

In January 2018, the Company redeemed all shares of its 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock ("Series A Preferred Stock") and 930,983 shares of its 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock ("Series B Preferred Stock") at redemption prices of \$25.00 per share plus accrued but unpaid distributions. The total redemption cost of \$50.0 million was reported as a preferred stock redemption liability on the consolidated balance sheet at December 31, 2017.

In March 2018, the Company redeemed all remaining shares of its Series B Preferred Stock at a redemption price of \$25.00 per share, or \$115.3 million, plus accrued but unpaid distributions, resulting in a preferred stock redemption charge of \$7.5 million on the consolidated statement of operations for the six months ended June 30, 2018.

On or after July 30, 2024, the Company may, at its option, redeem its 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock ("Series C Preferred Stock"), in whole or in part, at any time and from time to time, for cash at \$25.00 per share, plus accrued and unpaid dividends, if any, to the redemption date. Effective July 30, 2024 and thereafter, the Company will pay cumulative distributions on the Series C Preferred Stock at a floating rate equal to three-month LIBOR plus 5.927% per annum based on the \$25.00 liquidation preference, provided that such floating rate shall not be less than the initial rate of 8.625% at any date of determination.

Under a share repurchase plan authorized by the Board in August 2015, the Company was authorized to repurchase up to \$50.0 million of its outstanding equity and debt securities. In March 2016, the Company's Board approved a new securities repurchase program for up to \$50.0 million of its outstanding securities, which replaced the August 2015 repurchase plan. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, the Company did not repurchase any shares of its common or preferred stock through this program. At June 30, 2018, \$44.9 million remains available under this repurchase plan.

At June 30, 2018, the Company had 4.8 million shares of Series C Preferred Stock outstanding, with a weighted average issuance price, excluding offering costs, of \$25.00.

NOTE 12 - SHARE-BASED COMPENSATION

The following table summarizes the Company's restricted common stock transactions:

| | Non-Employee Directors | Non-Employees (1) | Former Employees | Total |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Unvested shares at January 1, 2018 | 34,565 | 419,541 | 28,967 | 483,073 |
| Issued | 27,032 | 209,355 | — | 236,387 |
| Vested | (29,947) | (237,039) | (23,158) | (290,144) |
| Forfeited | — | (1,725) | — | (1,725) |
| Unvested shares at June 30, 2018 | 31,650 | 390,132 | 5,809 | 427,591 |

(1) Non-employees are employees of C-III or Resource America.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

32

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The Company is required to value any unvested shares of restricted common stock granted to non-employees at the current market price. The fair values at grant date of the shares of restricted common stock granted to non-employees during the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 were \$2.0 million and \$2.7 million, respectively. The fair values at grant date of shares of restricted common stock issued to the Company's eight non-employee directors during the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 were \$255,000 and \$290,000, respectively.

At June 30, 2018, the total unrecognized restricted common stock expense for non-employees was \$2.2 million, with a weighted average amortization period remaining of 2.2 years. At December 31, 2017, the total unrecognized restricted common stock expense for non-employees was \$1.4 million, with a weighted average amortization period remaining of 2.0 years.

The following table summarizes restricted common stock grants during the six months ended June 30, 2018:

| Date | Shares | Vesting per Year | Vesting Date(s) |
|------------------|---------|------------------|---|
| January 18, 2018 | 209,355 | 33.3% | January 18, 2019, January 18, 2020 and January 18, 2021 |
| February 1, 2018 | 3,727 | 100.0% | February 1, 2019 |
| March 8, 2018 | 16,302 | 100.0% | March 8, 2019 |
| June 1, 2018 | 3,493 | 100.0% | June 1, 2019 |
| June 6, 2018 | 3,510 | 100.0% | June 6, 2019 |

The following table summarizes the status of the Company's vested stock options at June 30, 2018:

| Vested Options | Number of Options | Weighted Average Exercise Price | Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (in years) | Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands) |
|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Vested at January 1, 2018 | 10,000 | \$ 25.60 | | |
| Vested | — | — | | |
| Exercised | — | — | | |
| Forfeited | — | — | | |
| Expired | — | — | | |
| Vested at June 30, 2018 | 10,000 | \$ 25.60 | 2.88 | \$ — |

There were no options granted during the six months ended June 30, 2018 or 2017. The outstanding stock options have contractual terms of ten years and will expire in 2021.

The components of equity compensation expense for the periods presented are as follows (in thousands):

| | For the | | For the Six | |
|---|--------------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| | Three Months Ended | June 30, | Months Ended | June 30, |
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Restricted shares granted to non-employees ⁽¹⁾ | \$587 | \$675 | \$1,481 | \$1,390 |
| Restricted shares granted to non-employee directors | 72 | 59 | 145 | 132 |
| Total equity compensation expense ⁽²⁾ | \$659 | \$734 | \$1,626 | \$1,522 |

(1) Non-employees are employees of C-III or Resource America.

(2) Amounts exclude equity compensation expense for employees of PCM, which is included in net income (loss) from discontinued operations, net of tax on the consolidated statements of operations during the three and six

months ended June 30, 2017.

Under the Company's Third Amended and Restated Management Agreement ("Management Agreement"), incentive compensation is paid quarterly. Up to 75% of the incentive compensation is paid in cash and at least 25% is paid in the form of an award of common stock, recorded in management fee on the consolidated statements of operations. The Manager received no incentive management fee for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 or 2017.

All equity awards, apart from incentive compensation under the Management Agreement, are discretionary in nature and subject to approval by the compensation committee of the Company's Board.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

33

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 13 - EARNINGS PER SHARE

The following table presents a reconciliation of basic and diluted earnings (losses) per share for the periods presented as follows (in thousands, except share and per share amounts):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | |
|--|---|------------|---|------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Net income from continuing operations | \$9,189 | \$ 12,568 | \$9,052 | \$ 21,742 |
| Net income allocated to preferred shares | (2,587) | (6,015) | (7,797) | (12,029) |
| Consideration paid in excess of carrying value of preferred shares | — | — | (7,482) | — |
| Net loss allocable to non-controlling interest, net of taxes | — | 95 | — | 196 |
| Net income (loss) from continuing operations allocable to common shares | 6,602 | 6,648 | (6,227) | 9,909 |
| Net loss from discontinued operations, net of tax | (450) | (4,184) | (203) | (4,745) |
| Net income (loss) allocable to common shares | \$6,152 | \$ 2,464 | \$(6,430) | \$ 5,164 |
| Net income (loss) per common share - basic: | | | | |
| Weighted average number of shares outstanding | 31,215,598 | 30,820,442 | 31,163,859 | 30,786,527 |
| Continuing operations | \$0.21 | \$ 0.22 | \$(0.20) | \$ 0.32 |
| Discontinued operations | (0.01) | (0.14) | (0.01) | (0.15) |
| Net income (loss) per common share - basic | \$0.20 | \$ 0.08 | \$(0.21) | \$ 0.17 |
| Net income (loss) per common share - diluted: | | | | |
| Weighted average number of shares outstanding | 31,215,598 | 30,820,442 | 31,163,859 | 30,786,527 |
| Additional shares due to assumed conversion of dilutive instruments | 186,412 | 200,484 | — | 181,313 |
| Adjusted weighted-average number of common shares outstanding | 31,402,010 | 31,020,926 | 31,163,859 | 30,967,840 |
| Continuing operations | \$0.21 | \$ 0.22 | \$(0.20) | \$ 0.32 |
| Discontinued operations | (0.01) | (0.14) | (0.01) | (0.15) |
| Net income (loss) per common share - diluted | \$0.20 | \$ 0.08 | \$(0.21) | \$ 0.17 |
| Potentially dilutive shares excluded from calculation due to anti-dilutive effect ⁽¹⁾ | 14,885,296 | 16,002,859 | 14,885,296 | 16,002,859 |

Potentially dilutive shares issuable in connection with the potential conversion of the Company's 4.50% convertible senior notes due 2022 ("4.50% Convertible Senior Notes"), 6.00% convertible senior notes due 2018 ("6.00% (1) Convertible Senior Notes") and 8.00% convertible senior notes due 2020 ("8.00% Convertible Senior Notes") (see Note 10) were not included in the calculation of diluted net income (loss) per share because the effect would be anti-dilutive.

NOTE 14 - ACCUMULATED OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

The following table presents the changes in each component of accumulated other comprehensive income for the six months ended June 30, 2018 (in thousands):

| | Net Unrealized Gain on Derivatives | Net Unrealized Gain (Loss) on Investment Securities Available-for-Sale | Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) |
|--|---|--|--|
|--|---|--|--|

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|
| Balance at January 1, 2018 | \$ 602 | \$ 695 | \$ 1,297 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications | 1,604 | 98 | 1,702 |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income (1) | — | 217 | 217 |
| Balance at June 30, 2018 | \$ 2,206 | \$ 1,010 | \$ 3,216 |

Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income are reclassified to net realized and unrealized (1) gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives on the Company's consolidated statements of operations.

(Back to Index)

34

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

NOTE 15 - RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Relationship with C-III and Certain of its Subsidiaries. Resource America is a wholly-owned subsidiary of C-III, a leading CRE investment management and services company engaged in a broad range of activities, including primary and special loan servicing, loan origination, fund management, CDO management, principal investment, zoning due diligence, investment sales and multifamily property management. C-III is indirectly controlled and partially owned by Island Capital Group LLC ("Island Capital"), of which Andrew L. Farkas, the Company's Chairman, is the managing member. Mr. Farkas is also chairman and chief executive officer of C-III. In addition, Robert C. Lieber, the Company's Chief Executive Officer, is an executive managing director of both C-III and Island Capital. Matthew J. Stern, the Company's President, is a senior managing director of both C-III and Island Capital. Jeffrey P. Cohen, who is a member of the Company's Board, is an executive managing director of C-III and president of Island Capital. Those officers and the Company's other executive officers are also officers of the Company's Manager, Resource America, C-III and/or affiliates of those companies. At June 30, 2018, C-III indirectly beneficially owned 766,718, or 2.4%, of the Company's outstanding common shares.

The Company has a Management Agreement with the Manager, amended and restated on December 14, 2017, pursuant to which the Manager provides the day-to-day management of the Company's operations and receives substantial fees. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Manager earned base management fees of approximately \$2.8 million and \$5.6 million, respectively. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the Manager earned base management fees of \$2.6 million and \$5.2 million, respectively. No incentive management fees were earned for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, \$938,000 and \$1.0 million, respectively, of base management fees were payable by the Company to the Manager. The Manager and its affiliates provide the Company with a Chief Financial Officer and a sufficient number of additional accounting, finance, tax and investor relations professionals. The Company reimburses the Manager's and its affiliates' expenses for (a) the wages, salaries and benefits of the Chief Financial Officer, (b) a portion of the wages, salaries and benefits of accounting, finance, tax and investor relations professionals, in proportion to such personnel's percentage of time allocated to the Company's operations, and (c) personnel principally devoted to the Company's ancillary operating subsidiaries. The Company reimburses out-of-pocket expenses and certain other costs incurred by the Manager and its affiliates that relate directly to the Company's operations. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company reimbursed the Manager \$1.9 million and \$2.3 million, respectively, for all such compensation and costs. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the Company reimbursed the Manager \$1.1 million and \$3.0 million, respectively, for all such compensation and costs. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the Company had payables to Resource America and its subsidiaries pursuant to the Management Agreement aggregating approximately \$463,000 and \$629,000, respectively. The Company's base management fee payable and expense reimbursements payable are recorded in management fee payable and accounts payable and other liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets, respectively.

At June 30, 2018, the Company retained equity in seven securitizations that were structured for the Company by the Manager, although three of the securitizations had been substantially liquidated as of June 30, 2018. Under the Management Agreement, the Manager was not separately compensated by the Company for executing these transactions and is not separately compensated for managing the securitization entities and their assets.

Relationship with LCC. LCC, a former subsidiary of Resource America in which the Company owned a minority interest, originated and managed equipment leases and notes on behalf of the Company. In November 2011, the Company, together with LEAF Financial (which is a subsidiary of Resource America) and LCC, entered into a securities purchase agreement with Eos Partners, L.P. and certain of its affiliates. In July 2017, the Company sold its equity interests in LCC and received cash proceeds of \$84.3 million and, as a result, LCC is no longer considered a related party. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company did not record any income in respect of

its equity interests in LCC. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the Company recorded income of \$122,000 and \$288,000, respectively, in equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities on its consolidated statements of operations in respect of its equity interests in LCC.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

35

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)

JUNE 30, 2018

(unaudited)

Relationship with CVC Credit Partners. In April 2012, ACM, a former subsidiary of Resource America, was sold to CVC Credit Partners, a joint venture entity in which Resource America indirectly owned a 24% interest through August 2017. CVC Credit Partners managed externally originated syndicated corporate loans on the Company's behalf. In February 2011, one of the Company's subsidiaries purchased 100% of the ownership interests in Churchill Pacific Asset Management LLC ("CPAM") from Churchill Financial Holdings LLC for \$22.5 million. CPAM subsequently changed its name to RCAM. Through RCAM, the Company was entitled to collect senior, subordinated and incentive fees related to five CLOs holding approximately \$1.9 billion in assets managed by RCAM. RCAM was assisted by CVC Credit Partners in managing these CLOs. CVC Credit Partners is entitled to 10% of all subordinated fees and 50% of the incentive fees received by RCAM. For each of the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, CVC Credit Partners earned subordinated and incentive fees totaling \$119,000. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, CVC Credit Partners earned subordinated and incentive fees totaling \$775,000 and \$1.3 million, respectively, netted in other revenue on the Company's consolidated statements of operations. The Company did not record any impairment on the related intangible assets of these CLOs during the six months ended June 30, 2018, and it recorded \$177,000 of impairment during the six months ended June 30, 2017. The CLOs were liquidated in February 2013, January 2016, September 2016 and February 2017. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the Company no longer had any investment in RCAM. C-III sold its interest in CVC Credit Partners in August 2017, and, as a result, CVC Credit Partners is no longer considered a related party of the Company.

Relationship with LTCC Funding. In December 2012, the Board authorized the Company to reimburse Resource America for costs incurred related to the Company's life care business, LTCC Funding. In December 2016, the Board authorized a reimbursement of \$250,000 for fiscal year 2017, paid quarterly, of which \$62,000 and \$124,000 was incurred during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. At December 31, 2017, \$63,000 of authorized reimbursements were payable by the Company to Resource America and paid in January 2018. The annual reimbursement was not renewed for fiscal year 2018.

Relationship with Resource Real Estate, LLC. Resource Real Estate, LLC ("Resource Real Estate"), an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of Resource America and C-III, originates, finances and manages the Company's CRE loan portfolio. The Company reimburses Resource Real Estate for loan origination costs associated with all loans originated. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the Company had receivables from Resource Real Estate for loan deposits of \$285,000 and \$185,000, respectively.

Resource Real Estate serves as special servicer for the following five real estate securitization transactions, which provide financing for CRE loans: (i) RCC CRE Notes 2013, a \$307.8 million securitization that closed in December 2013; (ii) RCC 2014-CRE2, a \$353.9 million securitization that closed in July 2014; (iii) RCC 2015-CRE3, a \$346.2 million securitization that closed in February 2015; (iv) RCC 2015-CRE4, a \$312.9 million securitization that closed in August 2015; and (v) RCC 2017-CRE5, a \$376.7 million securitization that closed in July 2017. With respect to each specially serviced mortgage loan, Resource Real Estate receives a special servicing fee, payable monthly and on an asset-by-asset basis, equal to the product of (a) the special servicing fee rate, 0.25% per annum, multiplied by (b) the outstanding principal balance of such specially serviced mortgage loan. In December 2016 and August 2017, RCC CRE Notes 2013 and RCC 2014-CRE2, respectively, were liquidated and, as a result, the remaining assets were returned to RCC Real Estate in exchange for the Company's preference shares and equity notes in those securitizations.

Relationship with C3AM and C-III Commercial Mortgage. C3AM serves as the primary servicer for RCC 2017-CRE5 and XAN 2018-RSO6, a \$514.2 million securitization that closed in June 2018, and receives a servicing fee, payable monthly and on an asset-by-asset basis, equal to the product of (a) the servicing fee rate, 0.05% per annum, multiplied by (b) the outstanding principal balance of each mortgage loan for each securitization. C3AM serves as special servicer for XAN 2018-RSO6, under which it receives a special servicing fee equal to the product of (a) the special

servicing fee rate, 0.25% per annum, multiplied by (b) the outstanding principal balance of such specially serviced mortgage loan, and C40. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, C3AM earned approximately \$67,000 and \$102,000, respectively, in servicing fees. The Company had payables to C3AM for approximately \$16,000 at June 30, 2018.

In October 2017, C-III Commercial Mortgage LLC contributed loans to collateralize the C40 securitization, amounting to 10.2% of the total collateral pool value to the securitization.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

36

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

Relationship with RCM Global. In July 2014, the Company formed RCM Global Manager to invest in RCM Global, which held a portfolio of structured product securities that were liquidated in the second quarter of 2018. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recorded losses of \$6,000 and earnings of \$7,000, respectively, on its investment in RCM Global. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the Company recorded losses of \$166,000 and \$170,000, respectively, on its investment in RCM Global. Earnings and losses on the investment in RCM Global are recorded in equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities on the consolidated statements of operations. At June 30, 2018, the Company's residual ownership interest in RCM Global was 63.8%, and the remainder was owned by subsidiaries and current and former employees of Resource America.

Relationship with Pelium Capital. The Company holds a partnership interest in Pelium Capital, a specialized credit opportunity fund managed by an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of C-III that formerly held a portfolio of investment securities. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recorded earnings of \$75,000 and losses of \$230,000, respectively, on its investment in Pelium Capital. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the Company recorded earnings of \$82,000 and losses of \$77,000, respectively, on its investment in Pelium Capital. Earnings and losses on the investment in Pelium Capital are recorded in equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities on the consolidated statements of operations. During the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, the Company received proceeds of \$10.2 million and \$13.6 million as a result of the substantial liquidation of Pelium Capital's investments. The Company's investment balances in Pelium Capital were \$154,000 and \$10.5 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. The Company held an 80.2% interest in Pelium Capital at June 30, 2018.

Relationship with Pearlmark Mezzanine Realty Partners IV. In June 2015, the Company committed to invest up to \$50.0 million in Pearlmark Mezz. The investment advisor of Pearlmark Mezz is Pearlmark Real Estate LLC ("Pearlmark Manager"), which was 50% owned by Resource America. The Company paid Pearlmark Manager management fees of 1.0% on its unfunded committed capital and 1.5% on its invested capital. The Company was entitled to a management fee rebate of 25% for the first year of the fund, which ended in June 2016. Resource America credited any such fees paid by the Company to Pearlmark Manager against the base management fee that the Company paid to the Manager. In May 2017, the Company sold its equity interest in Pearlmark Mezz for proceeds of \$16.2 million, and, as a result, ceased to have any further investment in or commitment to Pearlmark Mezz. As a result, Pearlmark Mezz is no longer considered a related party.

NOTE 16 - DISTRIBUTIONS

For the quarters ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, the Company declared and subsequently paid dividends of \$0.10 and \$0.05 per common share, respectively.

In order to qualify as a REIT, the Company must currently distribute at least 90% of its taxable income. In addition, the Company must distribute 100% of its taxable income in order to not be subject to corporate federal income taxes on retained income. The Company anticipates it will distribute substantially all of its taxable income to its stockholders. Because taxable income differs from cash flow from operations due to non-cash revenues or expenses (such as provisions for loan and lease losses and depreciation), in certain circumstances the Company may generate operating cash flow in excess of its distributions or, alternatively, may be required to borrow funds to make sufficient distribution payments.

The Company's 2018 dividends are, and will be, determined by the Company's Board, which will also consider the composition of any dividends declared, including the option of paying a portion in cash and the balance in additional shares of common stock.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The following tables present dividends declared (on a per share basis) for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and year ended December 31, 2017 (and for the period from January 1, 2018 through March 26, 2018 with respect to the Company's Series B Preferred Stock):

| Common Stock | | | | Series B Preferred Stock | | | Series C Preferred Stock | | |
|--------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| | Date Paid | Total Dividend Paid (in thousands) | Dividend Per Share | Date Paid | Total Dividend Paid (in thousands) | Dividend Per Share | Date Paid | Total Dividend Paid (in thousands) | Dividend Per Share |
| 2018 | | | | | | | | | |
| March 31 | April 27 | \$ 1,584 | \$ 0.05 | March 26 | \$ 1,480 | \$0.320830 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| June 30 | July 27 | \$ 3,165 | \$ 0.10 | N/A | N/A | N/A | April 30 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| 2017 | | | | | | | | | |
| March 31 | April 27 | \$ 1,568 | \$ 0.05 | N/A | N/A | N/A | July 30 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| June 30 | July 28 | \$ 1,567 | \$ 0.05 | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | |
| September 30 | October 27 | \$ 1,566 | \$ 0.05 | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | |
| December 31 | January 26, 2018 | \$ 1,572 | \$ 0.05 | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | |
| 2018 | | | | | | | | | |
| March 26 | N/A | N/A | N/A | March 26 | \$ 1,480 | \$0.320830 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| March 31 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | April 30 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| June 30 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | July 30 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| 2017 | | | | | | | | | |
| March 31 | May 1 | \$ 568 | \$0.531250 | May 1 | \$ 2,859 | \$0.515625 | May 1 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| June 30 | July 31 | \$ 568 | \$0.531250 | July 31 | \$ 2,859 | \$0.515625 | July 31 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| September 30 | October 30 | \$ 568 | \$0.531250 | October 30 | \$ 2,859 | \$0.515625 | October 30 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |
| December 31 | January 30, 2018 | \$ 568 | \$0.531250 | January 30, 2018 | \$ 2,859 | \$0.515625 | January 30, 2018 | \$ 2,588 | \$0.539063 |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 17 - FAIR VALUE OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

The following table presents the Company's financial instruments carried at fair value on a recurring basis based upon the fair value hierarchy (in thousands):

| | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Total |
|--|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | |
| Assets: | | | | |
| Investment securities available-for-sale | \$ — | — | \$318,424 | \$318,424 |
| Derivatives | — | 2,273 | — | 2,273 |
| Total assets at fair value | \$ — | — | \$318,424 | \$320,697 |
| Liabilities: | | | | |
| Derivatives | \$ — | — | \$67 | \$67 |
| Total liabilities at fair value | \$ — | — | \$67 | \$67 |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | |
|--|------|-----|-----------|-----------|
| Assets: | | | | |
| Investment securities available-for-sale | \$ — | — | \$211,737 | \$211,737 |
| Investment securities, trading | — | — | 178 | 178 |
| Loans held for sale | — | — | 13 | 13 |
| Derivatives | — | 602 | — | 602 |
| Total assets at fair value | \$ — | — | \$211,928 | \$212,530 |
| Liabilities: | | | | |
| Derivatives | \$ — | — | \$76 | \$76 |
| Total liabilities at fair value | \$ — | — | \$76 | \$76 |

In accordance with guidance on fair value measurements and disclosures, the Company is not required to disclose quantitative information with respect to unobservable inputs contained in fair value measurements that are not developed by the Company. As a consequence, the Company has not disclosed such information associated with fair values obtained for investment securities available-for-sale, investment securities, trading, loans held for sale and derivatives from third-party pricing sources.

The following table presents additional information about the Company's assets that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis for which the Company has utilized Level 3 inputs (in thousands, except amount in footnote):

| | CMBS | ABS | Structured Notes | Loans Held for Sale | Total |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|-------|------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Balance, January 1, 2018 | \$211,579 | \$158 | \$178 | \$13 | \$211,928 |
| Included in earnings ⁽¹⁾ | 1,346 | (217) | 55 | 16 | 1,200 |
| Purchases | 113,783 | — | — | — | 113,783 |
| Sales | — | (48) | (11) | (29) | (88) |
| Paydowns | (8,522) | — | (222) | — | (8,744) |
| Capitalized interest | — | 7 | — | — | 7 |
| Included in OCI | 238 | 100 | — | — | 338 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

Balance, June 30, 2018 \$318,424 \$— \$ — \$— \$318,424

For loans held for sale classified as Level 3 at June 30, 2018, the Company recorded changes in unrealized gains of (1)\$9,000 and \$16,000 for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, in fair value adjustments on assets held for sale on the consolidated statements of operations.

Legacy CRE loans are measured at the lower of cost or market on a nonrecurring basis. To determine fair value of the legacy CRE loans, the Company primarily uses appraisals obtained from third-parties as a practical expedient. The Company may also use the present value of estimated cash flows, market price, if available, or other determinants of the fair value of the collateral less estimated disposition costs. During the six months ended June 30, 2018, a loss of \$4.7 million was recorded on one legacy CRE loan, which included protective advances of \$172,000, to adjust the loan to the average value of two appraisals, equal to \$18.0 million at June 30, 2018. The loan had a carrying value of \$22.5 million at December 31, 2017. The capitalization rates used in the updated appraisals were 9.25% and 9.75% at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

39

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

The Company is required to disclose the fair value of financial instruments for which it is practicable to estimate that value. The fair values of the Company's short-term financial instruments such as cash and cash equivalents, restricted cash, accrued interest receivable, principal paydowns receivable, accrued interest payable and distributions payable approximate their carrying values on the consolidated balance sheets. The fair values of the Company's investment securities, trading are reported in Note 7. The fair values of the Company's investment securities available-for-sale are reported in Note 8. The fair values of the Company's loans held for sale are reported in Note 5. The fair values of the Company's derivative instruments are reported in Note 18.

The fair values of the Company's loans held for investment are measured by discounting the expected future cash flows using the current interest rates at which similar loans would be made to borrowers with similar credit ratings and for the same remaining maturities. Fair values of loans with variable interest rates are expected to approximate fair value. Fair values of loans with fixed rates are calculated using the net present values of future cash flows, discounted at market rates. The Company's CRE loans have interest rates from 4.48% to 8.26% and 5.06% to 7.63% at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

The fair value of the Company's mezzanine loan is measured by discounting the expected cash flows using the future expected coupon rate. The Company's mezzanine loan is discounted at a rate of 10.63%.

The fair value of the Company's preferred equity investment is measured by discounting the expected cash flows using the future expected coupon rates. The Company's preferred equity investment is discounted at a rate of 12.78%.

Senior notes in CRE securitizations are valued using dealer quotes, typically sourced from the dealer who underwrote the applicable CRE securitization.

The fair values of the junior subordinated notes RCT I and RCT II are estimated by using a discounted cash flow model with discount rates of 11.34% and 11.34%, respectively.

The fair value of the convertible notes is determined using a discounted cash flow model that discounts the expected future cash flows using current interest rates on similar debts that do not have a conversion option. The 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes are discounted at a rate of 4.54%, the 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes are discounted at a rate of 4.92% and the 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes are discounted at a rate of 7.17%.

Repurchase agreements are variable rate debt instruments indexed to LIBOR that reset periodically and, as a result, their carrying value approximates their fair value, excluding deferred debt issuance costs.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

40

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The fair values of the Company's remaining financial instruments that are not reported at fair value on the consolidated balance sheets are reported in the following table (in thousands):

| | Carrying Amount | Fair Value | Fair Value Measurements | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|---|---|---|
| | | | Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets of Liabilities (Level 1) | Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2) | Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3) |
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Assets: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans held for investment | \$ 1,422,127 | \$ 1,432,072 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 1,432,072 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | \$ 18,000 | \$ 18,000 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 18,000 |
| CRE mezzanine loan | \$ 4,700 | \$ 4,700 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 4,700 |
| CRE preferred equity investment | \$ 19,191 | \$ 19,374 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 19,374 |
| Liabilities: | | | | | |
| Senior notes in CRE securitizations | \$ 632,005 | \$ 640,427 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 640,427 |
| Junior subordinated notes | \$ 51,548 | \$ 28,870 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 28,870 |
| Convertible notes | \$ 219,501 | \$ 235,385 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 235,385 |
| Repurchase agreements | \$ 416,592 | \$ 418,882 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 418,882 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | |
| Assets: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans held for investment | \$ 1,284,822 | \$ 1,294,664 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 1,294,664 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | \$ 61,841 | \$ 62,841 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 62,841 |
| Liabilities: | | | | | |
| Senior notes in CRE securitizations | \$ 416,655 | \$ 420,084 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 420,084 |
| Junior subordinated notes | \$ 51,548 | \$ 26,574 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 26,574 |
| Convertible notes | \$ 217,365 | \$ 235,385 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 235,385 |
| Repurchase agreements | \$ 477,917 | \$ 479,383 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 479,383 |

NOTE 18 - MARKET RISK AND DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS

The Company is affected by changes in certain market conditions. These changes in market conditions may adversely impact the Company's financial performance and are referred to as "market risks." When deemed appropriate, the Company uses derivatives as a risk management tool to mitigate the potential impact of certain market risks. The primary market risks managed by the Company through the use of derivative instruments are interest rate risk and foreign currency exchange rate risk.

The Company may hold various derivatives in the ordinary course of business, including: interest rate swaps and forward contracts. Interest rate swaps are contracts between two parties to exchange cash flows based on specified underlying notional amounts, assets and/or indices. Forward contracts represent future commitments to either

purchase or to deliver a quantity of a currency (foreign currency hedging) at a predetermined future date, at a predetermined rate or price and are used to manage currency risk with respect to the Company's long positions in foreign currency-denominated investment securities.

A significant market risk to the Company is interest rate risk. Interest rates are highly sensitive to many factors, including governmental monetary and tax policies, domestic and international economic and political considerations and other factors beyond the Company's control. Changes in the general level of interest rates can affect net interest income, which is the difference between the interest income earned on interest-earning assets and the interest expense incurred in connection with the interest-bearing liabilities. Changes in the level of interest rates also can affect the value of the Company's interest-earning assets and the Company's ability to realize gains from the sale of these assets. A decline in the value of the Company's interest-earning assets pledged as collateral for borrowings could result in the counterparties demanding additional collateral pledges or liquidation of some of the existing collateral to reduce borrowing levels.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

41

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

The Company seeks to manage the extent to which net income changes as a function of changes in interest rates by matching adjustable-rate assets with variable-rate borrowings. The Company seeks to mitigate the potential impact on net income (loss) of adverse fluctuations in interest rates incurred on its borrowings by entering into hedging agreements.

The Company classifies its interest rate risk hedges as cash flow hedges, which are hedges that eliminate the risk of changes in the cash flows of a financial asset or liability. The Company records changes in fair value of derivatives designated and effective as cash flow hedges in accumulated other comprehensive income, and records changes in fair value of derivatives designated and ineffective as cash flow hedges in earnings.

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the Company had fifteen and seven, respectively, interest rate swap contracts outstanding whereby the Company paid a weighted average fixed rate of 2.39% and 2.08%, respectively, and received a variable rate equal to one-month LIBOR. The aggregate notional amount of these contracts was \$72.8 million and \$41.8 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. The counterparty for the Company's designated interest rate hedge contracts at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 was Wells Fargo.

At June 30, 2018, the estimated fair values of the Company's assets and liabilities related to interest rate swaps were \$2.3 million and \$67,000, respectively. At December 31, 2017, the estimated fair value of the Company's assets related to interest rate swaps was \$602,000. The Company had aggregate unrealized gains of \$2.2 million and \$602,000 on the interest rate swaps at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, which are recorded in accumulated other comprehensive income on the consolidated balance sheets.

The Company incurred interest expense of \$18,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2017 to fully amortize the remaining accumulated other comprehensive (loss) on a swap agreement that was terminated in April 2016. The Company did not record any interest expense for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and the three months ended June 30, 2017 relating to amortization of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) for terminated swap agreements.

The Company had a master netting agreement with Wells Fargo at June 30, 2018. Regulations promulgated under the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010 mandate that the Company clear certain new interest rate swap transactions through a central counterparty. Transactions that are centrally cleared result in the Company facing a clearing house, rather than a swap dealer, as counterparty. Central clearing requires the Company to post collateral in the form of initial and variation margin to satisfy potential future obligations. At June 30, 2018, the Company had centrally cleared interest rate swaps with fair values in an asset and liability position of \$2.3 million and \$67,000, respectively. At December 31, 2017, the Company had centrally cleared interest rate swap contracts with a fair value in an asset position of \$602,000.

The Company was also exposed to foreign currency exchange rate risk, a form of risk that arises from the change in price of one currency against another. However, substantially all of the Company's revenues were transacted in U.S. dollars. To address this market risk, the Company generally hedged foreign currency-denominated exposures (typically investments in debt instruments, including forecasted principal and interest payments) with foreign currency forward contracts. The Company classified these hedges as fair value hedges, which are hedges that mitigated the risk of changes in the fair values of assets, liabilities, and certain types of firm commitments. The Company recorded changes in fair value of derivatives designated and effective as fair value hedges in earnings offset by corresponding changes in the fair values of the hedged items. As of June 30, 2018, the Company did not hold any foreign currency forward contracts.

Forward contracts also contain an element of risk in that the counterparties may be unable to meet the terms of such agreements. In the event the parties to deliver commitments are unable to fulfill their obligations, the Company could potentially incur significant additional costs by replacing the positions at then current market rates. The Company manages its risk of exposure by limiting counterparties to those banks and institutions deemed appropriate by

management. The Company does not expect any counterparty to default on its obligations and, therefore, the Company does not expect to incur any cost related to counterparty default.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

42

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The following tables present the fair value of the Company's derivative financial instruments as well as their classification on the Company's consolidated balance sheets and on the consolidated statements of operations for the periods presented:

Fair Value of Derivative Instruments at June 30, 2018 (in thousands)

| | Asset Derivatives | | |
|--|--------------------|---|------------|
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 52,610 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 2,273 |
| | | Liability Derivatives | |
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 20,216 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 67 |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | \$ 72,826 | Accumulated other comprehensive income | \$ 2,206 |

(1) Interest rate swap contracts are accounted for as cash flow hedges.

Fair Value of Derivative Instruments at December 31, 2017 (in thousands, except amount in footnotes)

| | Asset Derivatives | | |
|---|--------------------|---|------------|
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 41,750 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 602 |
| | | Liability Derivatives | |
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Forward contracts - foreign currency, hedging ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ | \$ 3,602 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 76 |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | \$ 41,750 | Accumulated other comprehensive income | \$ 602 |

(1) Interest rate swap contracts are accounted for as cash flow hedges.

(2) Foreign currency forward contracts are accounted for as fair value hedges.

(3) Notional amount is presented on a currency converted basis. The base currency notional amount of the Company's foreign currency hedging forward contracts in a liability position was €3.0 million at December 31, 2017.

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

The Effect of Derivative Instruments on the Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 (in thousands)

| Derivatives | | Realized and Unrealized Gain (Loss) ⁽¹⁾ |
|--|------------------|--|
| Consolidated Statements of Operations Location | | |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | Interest expense | \$ (80) |

(1) Negative values indicate a decrease to the associated consolidated statements of operations line items.

The Effect of Derivative Instruments on the Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 (in thousands)

| Derivatives | | Realized and Unrealized Gain (Loss) ⁽¹⁾ |
|--|---|--|
| Consolidated Statements of Operations Location | | |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | Interest expense | \$ (20) |
| Forward contracts - foreign currency, hedging | Net realized and unrealized (loss) gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | \$ (1,479) |

(1) Negative values indicate a decrease to the associated consolidated statements of operations line items.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

NOTE 19 - OFFSETTING OF FINANCIAL ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

The following table presents a summary of the Company's offsetting of derivative assets (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | (i) Gross Amounts of Recognized Assets | (ii) Gross Amounts Offset on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (iii) = (i) - (ii) Net Amounts of Assets Included on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (iv) Gross Amounts Not Offset on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (v) = (iii) - (iv) Net Amount |
|---|--|--|---|--|---|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 2,273 | \$ — | \$ 2,273 | \$ — | \$ — |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | |
| Derivatives, at fair value ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 602 | \$ — | \$ 602 | \$ — | \$ — |

⁽¹⁾ The Company posted cash margin of \$1.9 million related to interest rate swap contracts entered into at December 31, 2017.

The following table presents a summary of the Company's offsetting of financial liabilities and derivative liabilities (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | (i) Gross Amounts of Recognized Liabilities | (ii) Gross Amounts Offset on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (iii) = (i) - (ii) Net Amounts of Liabilities Included on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (iv) Gross Amounts Not Offset on the Consolidated Balance Sheets | (v) = (iii) - (iv) Net Amount |
|--|---|--|---|--|---|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Derivatives, at fair value ⁽²⁾ | \$ 67 | \$ — | \$ 67 | \$ — | \$ — |
| Repurchase agreements and term facilities ⁽³⁾ | 416,593 | — | 416,593 | 416,593 | — |
| Total | \$ 416,660 | \$ — | \$ 416,660 | \$ 416,593 | \$ 67 |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | | | |
|--|------------|----|-------------|-----------|------|-------|
| Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 76 | \$ | —\$ 76 | \$— | \$ — | \$ 76 |
| Repurchase agreements and term facilities (3) | 477,917 | — | 477,917 | 477,917 | — | — |
| Total | \$ 477,993 | \$ | —\$ 477,993 | \$477,917 | \$ — | \$ 76 |

(1) Amounts represent financial instruments pledged that are available to be offset against liability balances associated with term facilities, repurchase agreements and derivative transactions.

(2) The Company posted cash margin of \$739,000 related to interest rate swap contracts entered into at June 30, 2018.

(3) The combined fair value of securities and loans pledged against the Company's various repurchase agreements and term facilities was \$725.9 million and \$816.1 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

All balances associated with repurchase agreements and derivatives are presented on a gross basis on the Company's consolidated balance sheets.

Certain of the Company's repurchase agreements and derivative transactions are governed by underlying agreements that generally provide for a right of offset in the event of default or in the event of a bankruptcy of either party to the transaction.

(Back to Index)

44

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

NOTE 20 - COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

The Company may become involved in litigation on various matters due to the nature of the Company's business activities. The resolution of these matters may result in adverse judgments, fines, penalties, injunctions and other relief against the Company as well as monetary payments or other agreements and obligations. In addition, the Company may enter into settlements on certain matters in order to avoid the additional costs of engaging in litigation. Except as discussed below, the Company is unaware of any contingencies arising from such litigation that would require accrual or disclosure in the consolidated financial statements at June 30, 2018.

Open Litigation Matters

Six separate shareholder derivative suits (the "New York State Actions") purporting to assert claims on behalf of the Company were filed in the Supreme Court of New York on the following dates: December 2015 (the "Reaves Action"), February 2017 (the "Caito Action"), March 2017 (the "Simpson Action"), March 2017 (the "Heckel Action"), May 2017 (the "Schwartz Action") and August 2017 (the "Greff Action"). Plaintiffs in the Schwartz Action and Greff Action made demands on the Company's Board before filing suit, but plaintiffs in the Reaves Action, Caito Action, Simpson Action and Heckel Action did not. All of the shareholder derivative suits are substantially similar and allege that certain of the Company's current and former officers and directors breached their fiduciary duties, wasted corporate assets and/or were unjustly enriched. Certain complaints assert additional claims against the Manager and Resource America for unjust enrichment based on allegations that the Manager received excessive management fees from the Company. In June 2017, the Court stayed the Reaves Action, Caito Action, Simpson Action and Heckel Action (collectively, the "New York State Demand Futile Actions") in favor of the federal shareholder derivative litigation described below. The Company's time to respond to the complaints in the Schwartz Action and Greff Action is presently stayed by stipulation of the parties. The Company believes that the plaintiffs in each of the New York State Actions lack standing to assert claims derivatively on its behalf, and it intends to seek the dismissal of any New York State Action as to which the stay is lifted.

Four separate shareholder derivative suits purporting to assert claims on behalf of the Company were filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York (the "Court") on the following dates by shareholders who declined to make a demand on the Board prior to filing suit: January 2017 (the "Greenberg Action"), January 2017 (the "Canoles Action"), January 2017 (the "DeCaro Action") and April 2017 (the "Gehan Action"). In May 2017, the Court consolidated the Greenberg Action, Canoles Action, DeCaro Action and Gehan Action as the "Federal Demand Futile Actions" and, in July 2017, appointed lead counsel and directed that a consolidated complaint be filed. Following consolidation, the plaintiffs in the Canoles Action and Gehan Action voluntarily dismissed their suits. The consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Futile Actions, filed in August 2017, alleged claims for breach of fiduciary duty, corporate waste, unjust enrichment and violations of Section 14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. In April 2018, the consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Futile Actions was dismissed, but such dismissal is currently on appeal.

Three additional shareholder derivative suits purporting to assert claims on behalf of the Company were filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York on the following dates by shareholders who served demands on the Board to bring litigation and allege that their demands were wrongfully refused: February 2017 (the "McKinney Action"), March 2017 (the "Sherek/Speigel Action") and April 2017 (the "Sebenoler Action"). In May 2017, the Court consolidated the McKinney Action, Sherek/Speigel Action and Sebenoler Action as the "Federal Demand Refused Actions." A consolidated complaint was filed on June 30, 2017, alleging claims for breach of fiduciary duty, unjust enrichment and violations of Section 14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. The consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Refused Actions was dismissed in February 2018 but such dismissal is currently on appeal.

In August 2017, Robert Canoles filed a shareholder derivative suit in Maryland Circuit Court against certain of the Company's current and former officers and directors, as well as the Manager and Resource America (the "Canoles Action"). Mr. Canoles had previously filed his suit in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, but voluntarily dismissed that action after the Court declined to appoint his counsel as lead counsel in the Federal Demand Futile Actions. The complaint in the Canoles Action, as amended in October 2017, asserts a variety of claims, including claims for breach of fiduciary duty, unjust enrichment and corporate waste, which are based on allegations substantially similar to those at issue in the Federal Demand Futile Actions. The Canoles Action was stayed by the Maryland Circuit Court in favor of the federal shareholder litigation described above. The Company believes that Canoles lacks standing to assert claims derivatively on its behalf and intends to seek the dismissal of the Canoles Action on that basis if the stay is lifted.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

45

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

In September 2017, Michael Hafkey filed a shareholder derivative suit in the United States District Court for the District of Maryland against certain of the Company's former officers and directors and the Manager (the "Hafkey Action"). The complaint asserts a breach of fiduciary duty claim that is substantially similar to the claims at issue in the Federal Demand Refused Actions. Mr. Hafkey previously made a demand on the Board to investigate this claim, which was ultimately denied. The Company believes that Hafkey's claim that his demand to bring litigation was wrongfully refused is without merit and that Hafkey consequently lacks standing to assert claims derivatively on the Company's behalf. The Company filed a motion to stay the Hafkey Action - in favor of the duplicative Federal Demand Futile Actions, which is pending.

In April 2018, the Company funded \$2.0 million into escrow in connection with the proposed settlement of outstanding litigation. The Company did not have any general litigation reserve at June 30, 2018, and it had a general litigation reserve of \$2.2 million, including estimated legal costs, at December 31, 2017.

PCM is subject to litigation related to claims for repurchases or indemnifications on loans that PCM has sold to third parties. At June 30, 2018, no such litigation demand was outstanding. At December 31, 2017, such litigation demands totaled approximately \$6.5 million. Reserves for such litigation demands are included in the reserve for mortgage repurchases and indemnifications that totaled \$1.7 million and \$5.7 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. The reserves for mortgage repurchases and indemnifications are included in liabilities held for sale on the consolidated balance sheets.

Settled Litigation Matters

PCM was the subject of a lawsuit brought by a purchaser of residential mortgage loans alleging breaches of representations and warranties made on loans sold to the purchaser. The asserted repurchase claims related to loans sold to the purchaser that were subsequently sold by the purchaser to either the Federal National Mortgage Association or Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation and loans sold to the purchaser that were subsequently securitized and sold as RMBS by the purchaser to RMBS investors. This matter was settled on January 8, 2018. On November 22, 2017, the Plaintiff's motion for class certification was granted in *Levin v. Resource Capital Corp.* (the "Levin Action"), a previously disclosed securities litigation against the Company and certain of its current and former officers that was pending in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. On February 5, 2018, the Company entered into a stipulation and agreement of settlement (the "Settlement Agreement"), which received final approval from the Court on August 3, 2018. The Settlement Agreement settled all claims asserted in the action on behalf of the certified class (the "Settlement"), which consisted, with specified exceptions, of all persons who purchased the Company's common stock, Series B Preferred Stock or Series C Preferred Stock between October 31, 2012 and August 5, 2015. Under the terms of the Settlement Agreement, which has been filed publicly with the Court, a payment of \$9.5 million has been made to settle the litigation. The settlement payment was funded principally by insurance coverage, and the Company does not anticipate that the Settlement will have a material adverse impact on its financial condition. In exchange for the settlement consideration, the Company and the individual defendants in the Levin Action (and certain related parties) have been released from all claims that have been or could have been asserted in the case by class members (and certain related parties), excluding one holder of less than 500 shares who opted out of the Settlement. The terms of the Settlement and release of claims are described in greater detail in the Settlement Agreement filed with the Court and the Final Judgment and Order of Dismissal with Prejudice entered by the Court on August 3, 2018. The Settlement Agreement contains no admission of misconduct by the Company or any of the individual defendants and expressly acknowledges that the Company and the individual defendants deny all allegations of wrongdoing and maintain that it and they have at all times acted in good faith and in compliance with the law.

Other Contingencies

In May 2017, the Company received proceeds of \$16.2 million from the sale of its equity interest in Pearlmark Mezz, an unconsolidated entity. As part of the sale of Pearlmark Mezz, the Company entered into an indemnification agreement whereby the Company agreed to indemnify the purchaser against realized losses of up to \$4.3 million on the Kingsway mezzanine loan until the final maturity date in 2020. At June 30, 2018, the Company has a contingent liability, reported in accounts payable and other liabilities on its consolidated balance sheets, of \$703,000 outstanding as a reserve for probable indemnification losses. No reserve for probable losses was recorded during the three or six months ended June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

46

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

PCM is subject to additional claims for repurchases or indemnifications on loans that PCM has sold to investors. At both June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, outstanding demands for indemnification, repurchase or make whole payments totaled \$3.3 million. The Company's estimated exposure for such outstanding claims, as well as unasserted claims, is included in its reserve for mortgage repurchases and indemnifications.

Unfunded Commitments

Unfunded commitments on the Company's originated CRE loans generally fall into two categories: (1) pre-approved capital improvement projects; and (2) new or additional construction costs subject, in each case, to the borrower meeting specified criteria. Upon completion of the improvements or construction, the Company would receive additional interest income on the advanced amount.

NOTE 21 - DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS AND ASSETS AND LIABILITIES HELD FOR SALE

In November 2016, the Company received approval from its Board to execute the Plan to focus its strategy on CRE debt investments. The Plan contemplates disposing of certain legacy CRE loans and exiting underperforming non-core asset classes. Non-real estate businesses identified for sale were the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments as well as the Company's life settlement policy portfolio, or LCF. The Company reclassified the operating results of the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments as discontinued operations and excluded from continuing operations for all periods presented. In addition, the Company transferred the assets and liabilities of LCF and non-performing legacy CRE loans to held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. As of June 30, 2018, the Company has disposed of substantially all of the non-real estate businesses identified for sale.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

The following table summarizes the operating results of the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments' discontinued operations as reported separately as net loss from discontinued operations, net of tax for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|---|---|------------------|---|------------------|
| REVENUES | | | | |
| Interest income: | | | | |
| Loans | \$ 10 | \$ 893 | \$ 580 | \$ 1,790 |
| Other | 9 | 19 | 13 | 32 |
| Total interest income | 19 | 912 | 593 | 1,822 |
| Interest expense | — | — | — | — |
| Net interest income | 19 | 912 | 593 | 1,822 |
| Gain (loss) on sale of residential mortgage loans | 13 | 3,049 | (1 |) 6,874 |
| Fee (loss) income | (66 |) 1,497 | 33 | 3,677 |
| Total revenues | (34 |) 5,458 | 625 | 12,373 |
| OPERATING EXPENSES | | | | |
| Equity compensation | — | 162 | — | 221 |
| General and administrative | 443 | 8,922 | 1,103 | 16,395 |
| Total operating expenses | 443 | 9,084 | 1,103 | 16,616 |
| | (477 |) (3,626 |) (478 |) (4,243 |
| OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE) | | | | |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | 27 | (83 |) 275 | (85 |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | — | (475 |) — | (417 |
| Total other income (expense) | 27 | (558 |) 275 | (502 |
| LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS BEFORE TAXES | (450 |) (4,184 |) (203 |) (4,745 |
| Income tax expense | — | — | — | — |
| NET LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS, NET OF TAX | (450 |) (4,184 |) (203 |) (4,745 |
| Loss from disposal of discontinued operations | — | — | — | — |
| TOTAL LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS | \$(450) | \$(4,184) | \$(203) | \$(4,745) |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
 NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
 JUNE 30, 2018
 (unaudited)

The assets and liabilities of business segments classified as discontinued operations and other assets and liabilities classified as held for sale are reported separately in the accompanying consolidated financial statements and are summarized as follows at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands, except amounts in the footnote):

| | June 30, December 31, | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 |
| ASSETS | | |
| Restricted cash | \$— | \$ 138 |
| Accrued interest receivable | — | 67 |
| Loans held for sale ⁽¹⁾ | 19,978 | 93,063 |
| Other assets ⁽²⁾ | 978 | 14,450 |
| Total assets held for sale | \$20,956 | \$ 107,718 |

LIABILITIES

| | | |
|--|---------|-----------|
| Accounts payable and other liabilities | \$2,421 | \$ 10,283 |
| Management fee payable | — | 56 |
| Accrued interest payable | — | 3 |
| Total liabilities held for sale | \$2,421 | \$ 10,342 |

Includes a directly originated middle market loan with a carrying value of \$2.0 million at June 30, 2018 and (1)December 31, 2017. In July 2018 substantially all of the assets of the borrower were sold, resulting in \$2.1 million of loan repayments.

Includes the Company's investment in life settlement contracts of \$5.1 million at December 31, 2017, which were (2)transferred to held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. There were no life settlement contracts remaining at June 30, 2018.

In the first quarter of 2018, the Company sold its remaining syndicated middle market loans and recognized a \$243,000 net realized gain on these sales for the six months ended June 30, 2018.

The following table summarizes the loans held for sale in the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments as well as the non-performing legacy CRE loans transferred to held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. The loans held for sale are carried at the lower of cost or fair value (in thousands, except quantities and amounts in footnotes):

| Loan Description | Number of Loans | Amortized Carrying | |
|--|-----------------|--------------------|-----------|
| | | Cost | Value |
| At June 30, 2018: | | | |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽¹⁾ | 1 | \$ 24,614 | \$ 18,000 |
| Mezzanine loans ⁽²⁾ | 1 | — | — |
| Middle market loans ⁽³⁾ | 1 | 13,837 | 1,978 |
| Total loans held for sale | 3 | \$ 38,451 | \$ 19,978 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽¹⁾ | 5 | \$ 63,783 | \$ 61,841 |
| Mezzanine loans ⁽²⁾ | 1 | — | — |
| Middle market loans ⁽³⁾ | 5 | 41,199 | 29,308 |
| Residential mortgage loans ⁽⁴⁾⁽⁵⁾ | 14 | 1,914 | 1,914 |
| Total loans held for sale | 25 | \$ 106,896 | \$ 93,063 |

(1)

Two legacy CRE loans with amortized cost of \$28.3 million were reclassified as CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets at June 30, 2018 as it is now the Company's intent to hold these loans to maturity.

- (2) Includes a mezzanine loan with a par value of \$38.1 million that was acquired at a fair value of zero as a result of the liquidations of Resource Real Estate Funding CDO 2006-1, Ltd. in April 2016 and Resource Real Estate Funding CDO 2007-1, Ltd. in November 2016. The mezzanine loan is comprised of two tranches, maturing in November 2018 and September 2021.

- (3) Includes a directly originated middle market loan with a fair value of \$2.0 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. In July 2018 substantially all of the assets of the borrower were sold, resulting in \$2.1 million of loan repayments. The loan's fair value was supported by the projected proceeds from the sale of the business at June 30, 2018 and a third party valuation mark prepared at December 31, 2017.

- (4) The fair value option was elected for residential mortgage loans held for sale.

- The Company's residential mortgage loan portfolio was comprised of both agency loans and non-agency jumbo loans. The fair values of the agency loan portfolio were generally classified as Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy, as those values are determined based on quoted market prices for similar assets or upon other observable inputs.
- (5) The fair values of the jumbo loan portfolio were generally classified as Level 3 in the fair value hierarchy, as those values are generally based upon valuation techniques that utilize unobservable inputs that reflect the assumptions that a market participant would use in pricing those assets.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP. AND SUBSIDIARIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - (Continued)
JUNE 30, 2018
(unaudited)

NOTE 22 - SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

The Company has evaluated subsequent events through the filing of this report and determined that there have not been any events that have occurred that would require adjustments to or disclosures in the consolidated financial statements.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

50

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

ITEM MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF 2. OPERATIONS

Overview

The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes appearing elsewhere in this report. This discussion contains forward-looking statements. Actual results could differ materially from those expressed in or implied by those forward-looking statements. Additionally, please see the sections "Forward-Looking Statements" and "Risk Factors" for a discussion of risks, uncertainties and assumptions associated with those statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017. We are a Maryland corporation and a real estate investment trust ("REIT") that is primarily focused on originating, holding and managing commercial mortgage loans and commercial real estate-related debt investments. We are externally managed by Exantas Capital Manager Inc. (our "Manager") (formerly known as Resource Capital Manager, Inc.), which is an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of C-III Capital Partners LLC ("C-III"), a leading commercial real estate ("CRE") investment management and services company engaged in a broad range of activities. C-III is the beneficial owner of shares of our common stock (2.4% of our outstanding shares at June 30, 2018). Our Manager draws upon the management teams of C-III and its subsidiaries and its collective investment experience to provide its services. Our objective is to provide our stockholders with total returns over time, including quarterly distributions and capital appreciation, while seeking to manage the risks associated with our investment strategies. Historically, we have made other residential real estate and commercial finance investments. We have financed a substantial portion of our portfolio investments through borrowing strategies seeking to match the maturities and repricing dates of our financings with the maturities and repricing dates of our investments, and we have sought to mitigate interest rate risk through derivative instruments.

We are organized and have elected to be taxed as a REIT for U.S. federal income tax purposes under Subchapter M of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. We also intend to operate our business in a manner that will permit us to remain excluded from registration as an investment company under the Investment Company Act of 1940.

Our investment strategy targets the following CRE credit investments, including:

First mortgage loans, which we refer to as whole loans. These loans are typically secured by first liens on CRE property, including the following property types: office, multifamily, self-storage, retail, hotel, healthcare, student housing, manufactured housing, industrial and mixed-use.

First priority interests in first mortgage loans, which we refer to as A-Notes. An A-Note is typically a privately negotiated loan that is secured by a first mortgage on a commercial property or group of related properties that is senior to a B-Note secured by the same first mortgage property or group.

Subordinated interests in first mortgage loans, which we refer to as B-Notes. A B-Note is typically a privately negotiated loan that is secured by a first mortgage on a commercial property or group of related properties and is subordinated to an A-Note secured by the same first mortgage property or group. B-Notes are subject to more credit risk with respect to the underlying mortgage collateral than the corresponding A-Note.

Mezzanine debt that is senior to borrower's equity but is subordinated to other third-party debt. Like B-Notes, these loans are also subordinated CRE loans, but are usually secured by a pledge of the borrower's equity ownership in the entity that owns the property or by a second lien mortgage on the property.

Preferred equity investments that are subordinate to first mortgage loans and mezzanine debt. These investments may be subject to more credit risk than subordinated debt but provide the potential for higher returns upon a liquidation of the underlying property and are typically structured to provide some credit enhancement differentiating it from the common equity in such investments.

Commercial mortgage-backed securities, which we refer to as CMBS, that are collateralized by commercial mortgage loans, including senior and subordinated investment grade CMBS, below investment grade CMBS and unrated CMBS.

Other CRE Investments: We may invest in other income producing real estate debt and equity investments.

We generate our income primarily from the spread between the revenues we receive from our assets and the cost to finance our ownership of those assets, including corporate debt and from hedging interest rate risks. Historically, we have generated revenues from the interest and fees earned on our CRE whole loans, B notes, mezzanine loans,

preferred equity investments, CMBS, middle market loans, other asset-backed securities ("ABS") and structured note investments.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

51

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

We use leverage to enhance our returns, and we have financed each of our different asset classes with different degrees of leverage. The cost of borrowings to finance our investments is a significant part of our expenses. Our net income depends on our ability to control these expenses relative to our revenue. We historically have financed our CRE loan portfolio with repurchase agreements as a short-term financing source and securitizations and, to a lesser extent, other term financing as long-term financing sources. We expect to continue to use these financing sources into the near term future. We use derivative financial instruments to hedge a portion of the interest rate risk associated with our borrowings. We generally seek to minimize interest rate risk with a strategy that is expected to result in the least amount of volatility under generally accepted accounting principles while still meeting our strategic economic objectives and maintaining adequate liquidity and flexibility. These hedging transactions may include interest rate swaps, collars, caps or floors, puts, calls and options.

In November 2016, we received approval from our board of directors (the "Board") to execute a strategic plan (the "Plan") to focus our strategy on CRE debt investments. The Plan contemplates disposing of certain loans underwritten prior to 2010 ("legacy CRE loans"), exiting non-core businesses and investments, including residential real estate and commercial finance assets (collectively the "Identified Assets"), and establishing a dividend policy based on sustainable earnings.

We began the process of disposing of several ancillary businesses and investments as part of the Plan during the fourth quarter of 2016. The dispositions include our residential mortgage origination operations and our middle market lending segment. We moved these segments to discontinued operations and also moved our life settlement contract investment as well as several legacy CRE loans to held for sale classification in the fourth quarter of 2016 and recognized impairments to adjust the carrying value of these businesses and investments to their estimated fair market value. We have substantially completed the execution of the Plan as of June 30, 2018. At June 30, 2018, we have approximately \$47.6 million left in the Plan, of which \$46.3 million relates to remaining legacy CRE loans.

The following table delineates the disposable investments by business segment and details the current net book value of each included in the Plan (in millions):

| | Identified Assets at Plan Inception | Impairments/Adjustments on Non-Monetized Assets ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | Impairments/Adjustments on Monetized Assets ⁽¹⁾ | Monetized through June 30, 2018 ⁽³⁾ | Net Book Value at June 30, 2018 ⁽³⁾ |
|---|--|---|--|--|---|
| Discontinued operations and assets held for sale: | | | | | |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽⁴⁾ | \$ 162.2 | \$ (11.5) | \$ (17.5) | \$(115.2) | \$ 18.0 |
| Middle market loans | 73.8 | — | (17.7) | (56.1) | — |
| Residential mortgage lending segment ⁽⁵⁾ | 56.6 | (2.2) | (9.6) | (43.7) | 1.1 |
| Other assets held for sale | 5.9 | — | 3.8 | (9.7) | — |
| Subtotal - discontinued operations and assets held for sale | 298.5 | (13.7) | (41.0) | (224.7) | 19.1 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for investment ⁽⁶⁾⁽⁷⁾ | 32.5 | — | — | (4.2) | 28.3 |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 86.6 | — | 38.3 | (124.7) | 0.2 |
| Commercial finance assets | 62.5 | — | 2.1 | (64.6) | — |
| Total | \$ 480.1 | \$ (13.7) | \$ (0.6) | \$(418.2) | \$ 47.6 |

(1) Reflects adjustments as a result of the designation as assets held for sale or discontinued operations, which occurred during the third and fourth quarters of 2016 except as noted in (2) below.

(2) The impairment adjustment to middle market loans includes \$5.4 million of fair value adjustments that occurred prior to the inception of the Plan.

(3) Middle market loans include a pro forma adjustment of \$2.1 million for proceeds received in July 2018.

(4) Legacy CRE loans include \$88.2 million par value of loans at the inception of the Plan that were not reflected on the consolidated balance sheets until our investment in Resource Real Estate Funding CDO 2007-1, Ltd. ("RREF

CDO 2007-1") was liquidated in November 2016.

(5) Includes \$2.6 million of cash and cash equivalents not classified as assets held for sale in the residential mortgage lending segment at June 30, 2018.

(6) Legacy CRE loans with \$28.3 million of net book value were reclassified to CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets at June 30, 2018 as it is now our intent to hold these loans to maturity.

(7) Legacy CRE loans held for investment includes \$30.0 million par value of loans at the inception of the Plan that were not reflected on the consolidated balance sheets until our investment in RREF CDO 2007-1 was liquidated in November 2016.

(Back to Index)

52

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

We have deployed the incremental capital received primarily into our CRE lending business and CMBS investments. We typically target transitional floating-rate CRE loans between \$20.0 million and \$30.0 million. Since December 31, 2016, we have originated 47 CRE loans with total commitments of \$941.9 million, of which \$195.3 million of loan commitments were originated during the three months ended June 30, 2018. Since December 31, 2016, we have acquired CMBS with total face values of \$333.3 million, of which \$77.1 million were acquired during the three months ended June 30, 2018. These investments were initially financed, in part, through our CRE and CMBS term facilities and, in the case of CRE loans, through securitizations. In furtherance of our Plan, we intend to continue to utilize proceeds from the monetized assets, coupled with available debt financing of \$739.6 million at June 30, 2018, to grow our CRE lending operation in 2018.

In furtherance of the actions taken to reduce our cost of capital, we redeemed all shares of our 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock and 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock ("Series B Preferred Stock"), at a total redemption cost of \$165.3 million, during the first quarter of 2018. The redemptions eliminated approximately \$13.7 million of preferred stock dividends on an annual basis.

As a result of the Plan, the allocation of our equity at June 30, 2018 was: 91% in core assets and 9% in non-core assets. At December 31, 2017, the allocation of our equity was: 84% in core assets and 16% in non-core assets.

Results of Operations

Our net income allocable to common shares for the three months ended June 30, 2018 was \$6.2 million, or \$0.20 per share-basic (\$0.20 per share-diluted), and our net loss allocable to common shares for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was \$6.4 million, or \$(0.21) per share-basic (\$(0.21) per share-diluted) as compared to net income allocable to common shares for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017 of \$2.5 million, or \$0.08 per share-basic (\$0.08 per share-diluted), and \$5.2 million, or \$0.17 per share-basic (\$0.17 per share-diluted), respectively.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Net Interest Income

The following tables analyze the change in interest income and interest expense for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 by changes in volume and changes in rates. The changes attributable to the combined changes in volume and rate have been allocated proportionately, based on absolute values, to the changes due to volume and changes due to rates (in thousands):

| | Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 Compared to Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 | | |
|---|--|----------|----------|
| | Due to Changes in | | |
| | Net Change | Volume | Rate |
| Increase (decrease) in interest income: | | | |
| CRE loans | \$3,594 | \$2,161 | \$1,433 |
| Securities | 2,876 | 3,060 | (184) |
| Other | (445) | (436) | (9) |
| Total increase in interest income | 6,025 | 4,785 | 1,240 |
| Increase (decrease) in interest expense: | | | |
| Securitized borrowings: | | | |
| RCC 2014-CRE2 Senior Notes | (927) | (927) | — |
| RCC 2015-CRE3 Senior Notes | (1,761) | (2,358) | 597 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 Senior Notes | (374) | (748) | 374 |
| RCC 2017-CRE5 Senior Notes | 2,040 | 2,040 | — |
| XAN 2018-RSO6 Senior Notes | 158 | 158 | — |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 124 | — | 124 |
| Convertible senior notes: | | | |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 2,388 | 2,388 | — |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | (835) | (835) | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | (1,805) | (1,805) | — |
| CRE - term repurchase facilities | 1,131 | 235 | 896 |
| CMBS - term repurchase facilities | (416) | (480) | 64 |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities | 803 | 809 | (6) |
| CMBS - short term repurchase agreements | 1,259 | 1,259 | — |
| Hedging | 27 | 27 | — |
| Total increase (decrease) in interest expense | 1,812 | (237) | 2,049 |
| Net increase (decrease) in net interest income | \$4,213 | \$5,022 | \$(809) |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| | Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 Compared to Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | | |
|---|--|----------|-----------|
| | Due to Changes in | | |
| | Net Change | Volume | Rate |
| Increase (decrease) in interest income: | | | |
| CRE loans | \$4,444 | \$1,787 | \$2,657 |
| Securities | 4,024 | 5,036 | (1,012) |
| Other | (1,957) | (1,930) | (27) |
| Total increase in interest income | 6,511 | 4,893 | 1,618 |
| Increase (decrease) in interest expense: | | | |
| Securitized borrowings: | | | |
| RCC 2014-CRE2 Senior Notes | (2,358) | (2,358) | — |
| RCC 2015-CRE3 Senior Notes | (2,663) | (3,921) | 1,258 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 Senior Notes | (1,281) | (2,054) | 773 |
| RCC 2017-CRE5 Senior Notes | 3,897 | 3,897 | — |
| XAN 2018-RSO6 Senior Notes | 158 | 158 | — |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 208 | — | 208 |
| Convertible senior notes: | | | |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 4,753 | 4,753 | — |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | (1,672) | (1,672) | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | (3,608) | (3,608) | — |
| CRE - term repurchase facilities | 1,602 | 8 | 1,594 |
| CMBS - term repurchase facilities | (695) | (887) | 192 |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities | 1,558 | 1,577 | (19) |
| CMBS - short term repurchase agreements | 1,983 | 1,983 | — |
| Hedging | 60 | 60 | — |
| Total increase (decrease) in interest expense | 1,942 | (2,064) | 4,006 |
| Net increase (decrease) in net interest income | \$4,569 | \$6,957 | \$(2,388) |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

55

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The following table presents the average net yield and average cost of funds for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 | | |
|---|---|---------------------------------|---|---|---------------------------------|---|
| | Average Balance | Interest Income (Expense) | Average Net Yield (Cost of Funds) | Average Balance | Interest Income (Expense) | Average Net Yield (Cost of Funds) |
| Interest-earning assets | | | | | | |
| CRE loans | \$1,479,171 | \$25,435 | 6.93 % | \$1,429,352 | \$21,841 | 6.13 % |
| Securities | 269,252 | 4,205 | 6.26 % | 97,581 | 1,329 | 6.24 % |
| Other | 3,368 | 20 | 0.59 % | 38,200 | 465 | 13.48 % |
| Total interest income/average net yield | 1,751,791 | 29,660 | 6.81 % | 1,565,133 | 23,635 | 6.32 % |
| Interest-bearing liabilities | | | | | | |
| Collateralized by: | | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 751,422 | (8,482) | (4.53)% | 772,625 | (8,215) | (4.26)% |
| CMBS | 162,808 | (1,385) | (3.41)% | 71,658 | (542) | (3.03)% |
| General corporate debt: | | | | | | |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 51,548 | (806) | (6.19)% | 51,548 | (682) | (5.09)% |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 143,750 | (2,388) | (6.57)% | — | — | — % |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 70,453 | (1,309) | (7.35)% | 115,000 | (2,145) | (7.38)% |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 21,182 | (481) | (8.98)% | 100,000 | (2,285) | (9.04)% |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities | 73,931 | (1,278) | (6.93)% | 26,598 | (475) | (7.17)% |
| Hedging | 47,612 | (30) | (0.25)% | 1,501 | (3) | (0.73)% |
| Total interest expense/average cost of funds | \$1,322,706 | (16,159) | (4.88)% | \$1,138,930 | (14,347) | (5.02)% |
| Total net interest income/average spread | | \$13,501 | | | \$9,288 | |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The following table presents the average net yield and average cost of funds for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | | |
|---|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| | Average Balance | Interest Income (Expense) | Average Net Yield (Cost of Funds) | Average Balance | Interest Income (Expense) | Average Net Yield (Cost of Funds) |
| Interest-earning assets | | | | | | |
| CRE loans | \$1,436,685 | \$47,818 | 6.71 % | \$1,447,704 | \$43,374 | 6.03 % |
| Securities | 243,206 | 7,661 | 6.37 % | 97,638 | 3,637 | 6.83 % |
| Other | 19,652 | 138 | 0.71 % | 43,516 | 2,095 | 13.66 % |
| Total interest income/average net yield | 1,699,543 | 55,617 | 6.59 % | 1,588,858 | 49,106 | 6.29 % |
| Interest-bearing liabilities | | | | | | |
| Collateralized by: | | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 718,426 | (15,742) | (4.42)% | 801,198 | (16,387) | (4.12)% |
| CMBS | 140,917 | (2,372) | (3.39)% | 74,126 | (1,084) | (2.95)% |
| General corporate debt: | | | | | | |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures | 51,548 | (1,530) | (5.90)% | 51,548 | (1,322) | (5.02)% |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes | 143,750 | (4,753) | (6.58)% | — | — | — % |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 70,453 | (2,617) | (7.39)% | 115,000 | (4,289) | (7.42)% |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes | 21,182 | (961) | (9.02)% | 100,000 | (4,569) | (9.09)% |
| Trust certificates - term repurchase facilities | 74,174 | (2,488) | (6.76)% | 26,598 | (930) | (7.05)% |
| Hedging | 44,915 | (80) | (0.36)% | 755 | (20) | (0.73)% |
| Total interest expense/average cost of funds | \$1,265,365 | (30,543) | (4.85)% | \$1,169,225 | (28,601) | (4.90)% |
| Total net interest income/average spread | | \$25,074 | | | \$20,505 | |

Interest Income

The following tables set forth information relating to our interest income recognized for the periods presented (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|---|--|-------------|--|-------------|
| | Weighted Average Yield ⁽¹⁾ | Balance | Weighted Average Yield ⁽¹⁾ | Balance |
| Interest income: | | | | |
| Interest income from loans: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 7.14% | \$1,383,028 | 6.59% | \$1,269,726 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 1.79% | \$75,692 | 2.47% | \$159,626 |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 11.69% | \$19,263 | —% | \$— |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 10.14% | \$1,188 | —% | \$— |
| Interest income from securities: | | | | |
| CMBS | 6.26% | \$269,252 | 5.64% | \$91,685 |
| ABS | —% | \$— | 18.62% | \$4,530 |
| RMBS | —% | \$— | 5.44% | \$1,366 |
| Preference payments on structured notes | —% | \$— | 34.04% | \$14,816 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

Preference payments on trading securities —% \$267 1.87% \$3,509

(1) The weighted average yield includes net amortization/accretion and fee income in the calculation.

(2) Includes two legacy CRE loans reclassified to CRE loans from assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheet at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

57

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|---|---|-------------|---|-------------|
| | Weighted Average Yield ⁽¹⁾ | Balance | Weighted Average Yield ⁽¹⁾ | Balance |
| Interest income: | | | | |
| Interest income from loans: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 6.95% | \$1,350,209 | 6.48% | \$1,276,209 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 1.75% | \$75,876 | 2.71% | \$171,495 |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 11.69% | \$10,003 | —% | \$— |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 10.14% | \$597 | —% | \$— |

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------|-----------|--------|----------|
| Interest income from securities: | | | | |
| CMBS | 6.37% | \$243,153 | 6.48% | \$93,890 |
| ABS | 0.02% | \$53 | 21.85% | \$2,338 |
| RMBS | —% | \$— | 5.43% | \$1,410 |

| | | | | |
|---|-------|---------|--------|----------|
| Preference payments on structured notes | —% | \$— | 22.02% | \$16,171 |
| Preference payments on trading securities | 0.03% | \$1,895 | 59.54% | \$3,895 |

(1) The weighted average yield includes net amortization/accretion and fee income in the calculation.

(2) Includes two legacy CRE loans reclassified to CRE loans from assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheet at June 30, 2018.

The following tables summarize interest income for the periods indicated (in thousands, except percentages):

| Type of Investment | Weighted Average Coupon Interest | Unamortized (Discount) Premium | Net Amortization/Accretion | Interest Income | Fee Income ⁽¹⁾ | Total |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018: | | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 6.49 % | \$ (7,916) | \$ — | \$22,571 | \$2,022 | \$24,593 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 1.78 % | \$ — | — | 339 | — | 339 |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 11.50 % | \$ (183) | — | 552 | 10 | 562 |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 10.00 % | \$ — | — | 30 | — | 30 |
| Syndicated corporate loans | — % | \$ — | — | 2 | (91) | (89) |
| Total interest income from loans | | | — | 23,494 | 1,941 | 25,435 |
| CMBS | 4.49 % | \$ (46,025) | 706 | 3,499 | — | 4,205 |
| Total interest income from securities | | | 706 | 3,499 | — | 4,205 |
| Other | — % | \$ — | — | 20 | — | 20 |
| Total interest income - other | | | — | 20 | — | 20 |
| Total interest income | | | \$ 706 | \$27,013 | \$1,941 | \$29,660 |

For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017:

| | | | | | | |
|---|--------|-------------|------|----------|---------|----------|
| CRE whole loans | 5.93 % | \$ (5,602) | \$ — | \$18,923 | \$1,935 | \$20,858 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 2.72 % | \$ — | — | 981 | — | 981 |
| Syndicated corporate loans | — % | \$ — | — | 2 | — | 2 |
| Total interest income from loans | | | — | 19,906 | 1,935 | 21,841 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------|---|-----------|---|--------|---|-----------|----------|-----------|
| CMBS | 5.22 | % | \$ (5,801 |) | (99 |) | 1,209 | — | 1,110 |
| ABS | 4.35 | % | \$ — | | — | | 200 | — | 200 |
| RMBS | 5.45 | % | \$ 35 | | — | | 19 | — | 19 |
| Total interest income from securities | | | | | (99 |) | 1,428 | — | 1,329 |
| Preference payments on structured notes | — | % | \$ — | | — | | 409 | — | 409 |
| Preference payments on trading securities | — | % | \$ — | | — | | 16 | — | 16 |
| Other | — | % | \$ — | | — | | 40 | — | 40 |
| Total interest income - other | | | | | — | | 465 | — | 465 |
| Total interest income | | | | | \$ (99 |) | \$ 21,799 | \$ 1,935 | \$ 23,635 |

(1) Fee income recognized as a component of interest income is primarily comprised of loan origination fees, loan exit fees and loan extension fees.

(2) Includes two legacy CRE loans reclassified to CRE loans from assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheet at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| Type of Investment | Weighted Average Coupon Interest | Unamortized (Discount) Premium | Net Amortization/Accretion | Interest Income | Fee Income (1) | Total |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------|
| For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018: | | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 6.38 % | \$ (7,916) | \$ — | \$43,140 | \$ 3,404 | \$46,544 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 1.74 % | \$ — | — | 660 | — | 660 |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 11.50 % | \$ (183) | — | 570 | 10 | 580 |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 10.00 % | \$ — | — | 30 | — | 30 |
| Syndicated corporate loans | — % | \$ — | — | 4 | — | 4 |
| Total interest income from loans | | | — | 44,404 | 3,414 | 47,818 |
| CMBS | 4.47 % | \$ (46,025) | 1,347 | 6,314 | — | 7,661 |
| Total interest income from securities | | | 1,347 | 6,314 | — | 7,661 |
| Other | — % | \$ — | — | 138 | — | 138 |
| Total interest income - other | | | — | 138 | — | 138 |
| Total interest income | | | \$ 1,347 | \$50,856 | \$ 3,414 | \$55,617 |
| For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017: | | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 5.84 % | \$ (5,602) | \$ (2) | \$37,204 | \$ 3,819 | \$41,021 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale ⁽²⁾ | 2.65 % | \$ — | — | 2,305 | — | 2,305 |
| Syndicated corporate loans | — % | \$ — | — | 48 | — | 48 |
| Total interest income from loans | | | (2) | 39,557 | 3,819 | 43,374 |
| CMBS | 5.31 % | \$ (5,801) | 103 | 3,083 | — | 3,186 |
| ABS | 5.07 % | \$ — | — | 413 | — | 413 |
| RMBS | 5.44 % | \$ 35 | — | 38 | — | 38 |
| Total interest income from securities | | | 103 | 3,534 | — | 3,637 |
| Preference payments on structured notes | — % | \$ — | — | 880 | — | 880 |
| Preference payments on trading securities | — % | \$ — | — | 1,150 | — | 1,150 |
| Other | — % | \$ — | — | 65 | — | 65 |
| Total interest income - other | | | — | 2,095 | — | 2,095 |
| Total interest income | | | \$ 101 | \$45,186 | \$ 3,819 | \$49,106 |

(1) Fee income recognized as a component of interest income is primarily comprised of loan origination fees, loan exit fees and loan extension fees.

(2) Includes two legacy CRE loans reclassified to CRE loans from assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheet at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 as compared to Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2017

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar | Percent | |
|---|---|----------|---------|---------|-----|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Change | Change | |
| Interest income: | | | | | |
| Interest income from loans: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | \$24,593 | \$20,858 | \$3,735 | 18 | % |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | 339 | 981 | (642) | (65) | % |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 562 | — | 562 | 100 | % |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 30 | — | 30 | 100 | % |
| Syndicated corporate loans | (89) | 2 | (91) | N/M | (1) |
| Total interest income from loans | 25,435 | 21,841 | 3,594 | 16 | % |
| Interest income from securities: | | | | | |
| CMBS | 4,205 | 1,110 | 3,095 | 279 | % |
| ABS | — | 200 | (200) | (100) | % |
| RMBS | — | 19 | (19) | (100) | % |
| Total interest income from securities | 4,205 | 1,329 | 2,876 | 216 | % |
| Interest income - other: | | | | | |
| Preference payments on structured notes | — | 409 | (409) | (100) | % |
| Preference payments on trading securities | — | 16 | (16) | (100) | % |
| Other | 20 | 40 | (20) | (50) | % |
| Total interest income - other | 20 | 465 | (445) | (96) | % |
| Total interest income | \$29,660 | \$23,635 | \$6,025 | 25 | % |

(1) Results of computation are not meaningful.

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar | Percent | |
|---------------------------------------|---|----------|---------|---------|---|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Change | Change | |
| Interest income: | | | | | |
| Interest income from loans: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | \$46,544 | \$41,021 | \$5,523 | 13 | % |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | 660 | 2,305 | (1,645) | (71) | % |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 580 | — | 580 | 100 | % |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 30 | — | 30 | 100 | % |
| Syndicated corporate loans | 4 | 48 | (44) | (92) | % |
| Total interest income from loans | 47,818 | 43,374 | 4,444 | 10 | % |
| Interest income from securities: | | | | | |
| CMBS | 7,661 | 3,186 | 4,475 | 140 | % |
| ABS | — | 413 | (413) | (100) | % |
| RMBS | — | 38 | (38) | (100) | % |
| Total interest income from securities | 7,661 | 3,637 | 4,024 | 111 | % |
| Interest income - other: | | | | | |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| Preference payments on structured notes | — | 880 | (880) | (100)% |
| Preference payments on trading securities | — | 1,150 | (1,150) | (100)% |
| Other | 138 | 65 | 73 | 112 % |
| Total interest income - other | 138 | 2,095 | (1,957) | (93)% |
| Total interest income | \$55,617 | \$49,106 | \$6,511 | 13 % |

Aggregate interest income increased by \$6.0 million and \$6.5 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. We attribute the changes to the following:

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

60

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Interest Income from Loans

CRE whole loans. The increases of \$3.7 million and \$5.5 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to an increase in the one-month London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR"), our benchmark rate on CRE whole loans, over the comparative periods and an increase in the outstanding balance of the CRE whole loans, attributable to net fundings of \$149.7 million for the 12 months ended June 30, 2018. The increases were offset by a decline in income related to origination, extension and exit fees for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Legacy CRE loans held for sale. The decreases of \$642,000 and \$1.6 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to legacy CRE loan payoffs, including: a February 2017 payoff of one loan with a carrying value of \$14.3 million, the July 2017 payoffs of two loans with total carrying values of \$61.4 million and a December 2017 payoff of one loan with a carrying value of \$15.0 million.

CRE preferred equity investment. The increases of \$562,000 and \$580,000 for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are attributable to our March 2018 investment in a preferred equity interest with outstanding principal of \$19.4 million and an 11.50% interest rate at June 30, 2018.

Interest Income from Securities

CMBS. The increases of \$3.1 million and \$4.5 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to acquisitions of CMBS with aggregate face values of \$314.1 million during the 12 months ended June 30, 2018. The yield for the six months ended June 30, 2017 includes \$502,000 of non-recurring items. Adjusted for non-recurring items, the yield for the six months ended June 30, 2017 is 5.95%, as compared to 6.37% for the six months ended June 30, 2018.

ABS. The decreases of \$200,000 and \$413,000 for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to ABS sales, including: the September 2017 sales of four securities with total amortized costs at sale of \$2.5 million and the December 2017 sale of one security with an amortized cost at sale of \$1.8 million. The remaining security was sold in March 2017.

Interest Income - Other

Preference payments on structured notes. The decreases of \$409,000 and \$880,000 for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are attributable to the May, June and September 2017 sales of the three remaining Harvest collateralized loan obligation ("CLO") securities.

Preference payments on trading securities. The decrease of \$1.2 million for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 are primarily attributable to the receipt of \$1.1 million of cash in excess of our cost basis, recorded as interest income on our consolidated statements of operations, on a trading security in the first quarter of 2017.

Interest Expense

The following tables set forth information relating to our interest expense incurred for the periods presented, by asset class (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|--|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| | Weighted Average Cost of Funds | Balance | Weighted Average Cost of Funds | Balance |
| Interest expense: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 4.53% | \$751,422 | 4.26% | \$772,625 |
| Convertible senior notes | 7.02% | \$235,385 | 8.15% | \$215,000 |
| CMBS | 3.41% | \$162,808 | 3.03% | \$71,658 |
| Trust certificates | 6.93% | \$73,931 | 7.17% | \$26,598 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 6.19% | \$51,548 | 5.09% | \$51,548 |

Hedging

0.25% \$47,612 0.73% \$1,501

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

61

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 Weighted Average Cost of Funds | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 Weighted Average Cost of Funds | |
|--|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Interest expense: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 4.42 % | \$718,426 | 4.12 % | \$801,198 |
| Convertible senior notes | 7.04 % | \$235,385 | 8.19 % | \$215,000 |
| CMBS | 3.39 % | \$140,917 | 2.95 % | \$74,126 |
| Trust certificates | 6.76 % | \$74,174 | 7.05 % | \$26,598 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 5.90 % | \$51,548 | 5.02 % | \$51,548 |
| Hedging | 0.36 % | \$44,915 | 0.73 % | \$755 |

The following tables summarize interest expense for the periods indicated (in thousands, except percentages):

| Type of Security | Coupon Interest | Unamortized | | Interest Expense | Total |
|--|--------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------|
| | | Deferred Debt Expense | Net Amortization | | |
| For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 3.83 % | \$ 10,606 | \$ 1,123 | \$7,359 | \$8,482 |
| Convertible senior notes | 5.26 % | \$ 15,884 | 1,080 | 3,098 | 4,178 |
| CMBS | 3.37 % | \$ — | — | 1,385 | 1,385 |
| Trust certificates | 6.43 % | \$ 417 | 77 | 1,201 | 1,278 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 6.19 % | \$ — | — | 806 | 806 |
| Hedging ⁽¹⁾ | 0.25 % | \$ — | — | 30 | 30 |
| Total interest expense | | | \$ 2,280 | \$13,879 | \$16,159 |

| | | | | | |
|--|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 3.25 % | \$ 5,346 | \$ 1,737 | \$6,478 | \$8,215 |
| Convertible senior notes | 6.93 % | \$ 5,296 | 706 | 3,724 | 4,430 |
| CMBS | 2.90 % | \$ — | 7 | 535 | 542 |
| Trust certificates | 6.52 % | \$ 208 | 37 | 438 | 475 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 5.09 % | \$ — | — | 682 | 682 |
| Hedging ⁽¹⁾ | 0.79 % | \$ — | — | 3 | 3 |
| Total interest expense | | | \$ 2,487 | \$11,860 | \$14,347 |

(1) Hedging coupon interest is calculated as the net of the fixed pay rate and floating rate received.

| Type of Security | Coupon Interest | Unamortized | | Interest Expense | Total |
|--|--------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------|
| | | Deferred Debt Expense | Net Amortization | | |
| For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 3.71 % | \$ 10,606 | \$ 2,092 | \$13,650 | \$15,742 |
| Convertible senior notes | 5.26 % | \$ 15,884 | 2,136 | 6,195 | 8,331 |
| CMBS | 3.23 % | \$ — | — | 2,372 | 2,372 |
| Trust certificates | 6.26 % | \$ 417 | 153 | 2,335 | 2,488 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 5.90 % | \$ — | — | 1,530 | 1,530 |
| Hedging ⁽¹⁾ | 0.37 % | \$ — | — | 80 | 80 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | | |
|--|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Total interest expense | | | \$ 4,381 | \$26,162 | \$30,543 |
| For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017: | | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | 3.08 % | \$ 5,346 | \$ 3,756 | \$12,631 | \$16,387 |
| Convertible senior notes | 6.93 % | \$ 5,296 | 1,408 | 7,450 | 8,858 |
| CMBS | 2.82 % | \$ — | 16 | 1,068 | 1,084 |
| Trust certificates | 6.41 % | \$ 208 | 74 | 856 | 930 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 5.03 % | \$ — | — | 1,322 | 1,322 |
| Hedging ⁽¹⁾ | 0.79 % | \$ — | — | 20 | 20 |
| Total interest expense | | | \$ 5,254 | \$23,347 | \$28,601 |

(1) Hedging coupon interest is calculated as the net of the fixed pay rate and floating rate received.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

62

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 as compared to Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2017

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
|--|---|----------|------------------|-------------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | | |
| Interest expense: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | \$8,482 | \$8,215 | \$267 | 3 % |
| Convertible senior notes | 4,178 | 4,430 | (252) | (6)% |
| CMBS | 1,385 | 542 | 843 | 156 % |
| Trust certificates | 1,278 | 475 | 803 | 169 % |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 806 | 682 | 124 | 18 % |
| Hedging | 30 | 3 | 27 | 900 % |
| Total interest expense | \$16,159 | \$14,347 | \$1,812 | 13 % |
| | | | | |
| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| | 2018 | 2017 | | |
| Interest expense: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans | \$15,742 | \$16,387 | \$(645) | (4)% |
| Convertible senior notes | 8,331 | 8,858 | (527) | (6)% |
| CMBS | 2,372 | 1,084 | 1,288 | 119 % |
| Trust certificates | 2,488 | 930 | 1,558 | 168 % |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures / other | 1,530 | 1,322 | 208 | 16 % |
| Hedging | 80 | 20 | 60 | 300 % |
| Total interest expense | \$30,543 | \$28,601 | \$1,942 | 7 % |

Aggregate interest expense increased by \$1.8 million and \$1.9 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. We attribute the changes to the following:

CRE whole loans. The increase of \$267,000 for the comparative three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to the execution of a new CRE - term repurchase facility in April 2018, resulting in \$298,000 of incurred interest expense during the three months ended June 30, 2018. The decrease of \$645,000 for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to a decrease in the outstanding notes payable balances on our securitizations, attributable to the August 2017 liquidation of Resource Capital Corp. 2014-CRE2, Ltd. ("RCC 2014-CRE2") and paydowns of \$120.9 million and \$101.6 million on Resource Capital Corp. 2015-CRE3, Ltd. ("RCC 2015-CRE3") and Resource Capital Corp. 2015-CRE4, Ltd. ("RCC 2015-CRE4"), respectively, during the 12 months ended June 30, 2018. The decrease is offset by increases in the cost of funds on our CRE - term repurchase facilities, related to an increase in one-month LIBOR over the comparative period, and new senior notes from Resource Capital Corp. 2017-CRE5, Ltd. ("RCC 2017-CRE5") and Exantas Capital Corp. 2018-RSO6, Ltd. ("XAN 2018-RSO6"), which closed in July 2017 and June 2018, respectively.

Convertible senior notes. The decreases of \$252,000 and \$527,000 for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to the extinguishment in the third quarter of 2017 of \$44.5 million and \$78.8 million of aggregate principal of our 6.00% convertible senior notes due 2018 ("6.00% Convertible Senior Notes") and 8.00% convertible senior notes due 2020 ("8.00% Convertible Senior Notes"), respectively. The decrease is offset by the issuance, in conjunction with the extinguishment, of our 4.50% convertible senior notes due 2022 ("4.50% Convertible Senior Notes"), with a lower cost of funds.

CMBS. The increases of \$843,000 and \$1.3 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to our acquisitions of CMBS, financed with CMBS repurchase facilities.

Trust certificates. The increases of \$803,000 and \$1.6 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to the September 2017 execution of the master repurchase agreement with RSO Repo SPE Trust 2017, with an outstanding balance of \$47.1 million at June 30, 2018, and the increase in one-month LIBOR over the comparative period.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

63

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Other Revenue

Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 as compared to Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2017

Other revenue decreased by \$812,000 and \$1.8 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, primarily due to decreases of \$698,000 and \$1.4 million, respectively, in fee income, attributable to management and incentive fee payments received in March and June 2017, on Resource Capital Asset Management, LLC's remaining CLO management contract, the CLO of which substantially liquidated in February 2017.

Operating Expenses

Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 as compared to Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2017

The following tables set forth information relating to our operating expenses for the periods presented (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | | |
|--|---|----------|------------------|-------------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| Operating expenses: | | | | |
| Management fees | \$2,812 | \$2,638 | \$174 | 7 % |
| General and administrative | 2,547 | 3,580 | (1,033) | (29)% |
| Equity compensation | 659 | 734 | (75) | (10)% |
| Depreciation and amortization | 19 | 32 | (13) | (41)% |
| Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net | — | 131 | (131) | (100)% |
| Total operating expenses | \$6,037 | \$7,115 | \$(1,078) | (15)% |
| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | | | |
| | 2018 | 2017 | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| Operating expenses: | | | | |
| Management fees | \$5,625 | \$5,318 | \$307 | 6 % |
| General and administrative | 5,607 | 7,443 | (1,836) | (25)% |
| Equity compensation | 1,626 | 1,522 | 104 | 7 % |
| Depreciation and amortization | 32 | 100 | (68) | (68)% |
| Impairment losses | — | 177 | (177) | (100)% |
| Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net | (799) | 1,130 | (1,929) | (171)% |
| Total operating expenses | \$12,091 | \$15,690 | \$(3,599) | (23)% |

Aggregate operating expenses decreased by \$1.1 million and \$3.6 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. We attribute the changes to the following:

Management fees. The increases of \$174,000 and \$307,000 for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to the amended base management fee as defined in our Third Amended and Restated Management Agreement ("Management Agreement"), equal to 1/12th of the amount of our equity multiplied by 1.50%. The Management Agreement fixed the base management fee at \$937,500 for each of the 15 successive months effective October 1, 2017.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

General and administrative. General and administrative expenses decreased by \$1.0 million and \$1.8 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The following tables summarize the information relating to our general and administrative expenses for the periods presented (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | | |
|---|---|---------|------------------|-------------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| General and administrative: | | | | |
| Wages and benefits | \$910 | \$972 | \$(62) | (6)% |
| Professional services | 536 | 1,077 | (541) | (50)% |
| D&O insurance | 283 | 298 | (15) | (5)% |
| Operating expenses | 254 | 371 | (117) | (32)% |
| Dues and subscriptions | 206 | 313 | (107) | (34)% |
| Director fees | 164 | 253 | (89) | (35)% |
| Travel | 85 | 88 | (3) | (3)% |
| Rent and utilities | 84 | 160 | (76) | (48)% |
| Tax penalties, interest and franchise tax | 25 | 48 | (23) | (48)% |
| Total general and administrative | \$2,547 | \$3,580 | \$(1,033) | (29)% |
| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | | | |
| | 2018 | 2017 | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| General and administrative: | | | | |
| Wages and benefits | \$1,945 | \$1,760 | \$185 | 11% |
| Professional services | 1,563 | 2,705 | (1,142) | (42)% |
| D&O insurance | 593 | 494 | 99 | 20% |
| Operating expenses | 453 | 781 | (328) | (42)% |
| Dues and subscriptions | 425 | 601 | (176) | (29)% |
| Director fees | 328 | 502 | (174) | (35)% |
| Rent and utilities | 162 | 316 | (154) | (49)% |
| Travel | 146 | 191 | (45) | (24)% |
| Tax penalties, interest and franchise tax | (8) | 93 | (101) | (109)% |
| Total general and administrative | \$5,607 | \$7,443 | \$(1,836) | (25)% |

The decreases in general and administrative expenses for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 are primarily attributable to decreases of \$541,000 and \$1.1 million, respectively, in professional services, related to \$275,000 of legal expenses associated with legacy CRE loans held for sale and \$308,000 of consulting fees for the review of our Management Agreement and the renaming and rebranding of our Company during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. The additional decrease in professional services for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is attributable to legal expenses of \$517,000 for an aborted CRE securitization during the six months ended June 30, 2017.

Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net. The decrease of \$1.9 million for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to recognition of a recovery of the general provision of approximately \$800,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2018 due to improvement of financial performance in our CRE whole loan portfolio, compared to a general provision of approximately \$860,000, resulting from the review and reassessment of the amount of the allowance in our CRE whole loan portfolio during the six months ended June 30, 2017. Additionally, the decrease is attributable to approximately \$270,000 of provisions on our direct

financing leases during the six months ended June 30, 2017.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

65

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Other Income (Expense)

Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 as compared to Three and Six Months Ended June 30, 2017

The following tables set forth information relating to our other income (expense) incurred for the periods presented (in thousands, except percentages):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
|--|---|----------|------------------|-------------------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | | |
| Other Income (Expense): | | | | |
| Equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities | \$69 | \$(118) | \$187 | 158 % |
| Net realized and unrealized gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | 932 | 9,478 | (8,546) | (90) % |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities, trading | 58 | (50) | 108 | 216 % |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | 9 | 79 | (70) | (89) % |
| Other income | 506 | 17 | 489 | 2,876 % |
| Total other income (expense) | \$1,574 | \$9,406 | \$(7,832) | (83) % |
| | | | | |
| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, | | Dollar Change | Percent Change |
| | 2018 | 2017 | | |
| Other Income (Expense): | | | | |
| Equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities | \$(223) | \$243 | \$(466) | (192) % |
| Net realized and unrealized gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | 290 | 17,084 | (16,794) | (98) % |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities, trading | 53 | (961) | 1,014 | 106 % |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | (4,656) | 58 | (4,714) | (8,128) % |
| Other income | 517 | 85 | 432 | 508 % |
| Total other income (expense) | \$(4,019) | \$16,509 | \$(20,528) | (124) % |

Aggregate other income decreased by \$7.8 million for the comparative three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 and \$20.5 million to an expense for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. We attribute the change to the following:

Net realized and unrealized gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives. The decreases of \$8.5 million and \$16.8 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, are primarily attributable to non-recurring realized gains of \$5.6 million and \$12.6 million during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively, in connection with the payoffs of legacy CRE loans. Additionally, the decreases are attributable to non-recurring realized gains of \$3.3 million on the sale of two investment securities available-for-sale during the six months ended June 30, 2017 and net realized and unrealized gains of \$655,000 and \$1.1 million on our life settlement contracts during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively.

Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities, trading. The increase of \$1.0 million from a loss to a gain for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to the receipt of a \$4.1 million principal payment on one trading security in the first quarter of 2017. Consequently, the trading security's fair value declined following the payment. There were no such transactions during the three months ended June 30, 2018. Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale. The decrease of \$4.7 million for the comparative six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to carrying value charges of \$4.7 million to write down one legacy CRE loan held for sale to its estimated fair value, based on appraisals received during the first quarter of 2018.

Other income. The increase of \$489,000 for the comparative three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 is primarily attributable to the recognition of \$478,000 of other income resulting from cash received, in excess of the total carrying values of the collateral management fee rebate assets, for the reduction of our right to the collateral management fee rebates to zero in the second quarter of 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

66

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Net Loss From Discontinued Operations, Net of Tax

In November 2016, our Board approved the Plan that would allow us to focus on making CRE debt investments and disposing of certain underperforming legacy CRE loans, exiting underperforming non-core asset classes and investments and establishing a dividend policy based on sustainable earnings. We met all of the criteria to classify the operating results of the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments as discontinued operations and exclude them from continuing operations for all periods presented. In addition, we transferred the assets and liabilities of Life Care Funding, LLC and certain legacy CRE loans to held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. As of June 30, 2018, we disposed of substantially all of the non-real estate assets identified for sale.

The following table summarizes the operating results of the residential mortgage and middle market lending segments' discontinued operations as reported separately as net loss from discontinued operations, net of tax for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | |
|---|---|------------------|---|------------------|
| REVENUES | | | | |
| Interest income: | | | | |
| Loans | \$ 10 | \$ 893 | \$ 580 | \$ 1,790 |
| Other | 9 | 19 | 13 | 32 |
| Total interest income | 19 | 912 | 593 | 1,822 |
| Interest expense | — | — | — | — |
| Net interest income | 19 | 912 | 593 | 1,822 |
| Gain (loss) on sale of residential mortgage loans | 13 | 3,049 | (1) | 6,874 |
| Fee (loss) income | (66) | 1,497 | 33 | 3,677 |
| Total revenues | (34) | 5,458 | 625 | 12,373 |
| OPERATING EXPENSES | | | | |
| Equity compensation | — | 162 | — | 221 |
| General and administrative | 443 | 8,922 | 1,103 | 16,395 |
| Total operating expenses | 443 | 9,084 | 1,103 | 16,616 |
| | (477) | (3,626) | (478) | (4,243) |
| OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE) | | | | |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss) on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | 27 | (83) | 275 | (85) |
| Fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale | — | (475) | — | (417) |
| Total other income (expense) | 27 | (558) | 275 | (502) |
| LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS BEFORE TAXES | | | | |
| Income tax expense | — | — | — | — |
| NET LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS, NET OF TAX | (450) | (4,184) | (203) | (4,745) |
| Loss from disposal of discontinued operations | — | — | — | — |
| TOTAL LOSS FROM DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS | \$(450) | \$(4,184) | \$(203) | \$(4,745) |

Net loss from discontinued operations. Net loss from discontinued operations decreased by \$3.7 million and \$4.5 million for the comparative three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The residential mortgage lending segment incurred a net loss of approximately \$486,000 and \$1.1 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively, primarily attributable to Primary Capital Mortgage, LLC's ("PCM") general and administrative expenses, particularly from consulting fees, incurred in the wind-down of that business. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the middle market lending segment generated net income of approximately \$36,000 and \$855,000, respectively, primarily attributable to interest income earned and net gains on

the sales of the remaining syndicated middle market loans of \$243,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

67

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

During the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the middle market lending segment generated net income of \$798,000 and \$1.7 million, respectively, primarily attributable to interest income earned on the remaining syndicated middle market loans. The residential mortgage lending segment recognized a net loss of approximately \$5.0 million and \$6.4 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively, primarily attributable to incurred costs resulting from the asset purchase agreement executed by PCM to sell its residential mortgage operating platform and certain other assets and liabilities.

Financial Condition

Summary

Our total assets were \$1.9 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Investment Portfolio

The tables below summarize the amortized cost and net carrying amount of our investment portfolio, classified by asset type, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 as follows (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| At June 30, 2018 | Amortized Cost | Net Carrying Amount | Percent of Portfolio | Weighted Average Coupon |
|--|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Loans held for investment: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | \$1,426,656 | \$1,422,127 | 79.62 % | 6.40% |
| CRE mezzanine loan | 4,700 | 4,700 | 0.26 % | 10.00% |
| CRE preferred equity investment | 19,191 | 19,191 | 1.07 % | 11.50% |
| | 1,450,547 | 1,446,018 | 80.95 % | |
| Investment securities available-for-sale: | | | | |
| CMBS | 317,414 | 318,424 | 17.83 % | 4.44% |
| Investment securities, trading: | | | | |
| Structured notes | 1,000 | — | — % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Other investments: | | | | |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 1,782 | 1,782 | 0.10 % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Direct financing leases ⁽⁴⁾ | 801 | 66 | — % | 5.66% |
| | 2,583 | 1,848 | 0.10 % | |
| Other assets held for sale: | | | | |
| Legacy CRE loan ⁽²⁾⁽⁵⁾ | 24,614 | 18,000 | 1.01 % | —% |
| Middle market loan ⁽⁶⁾ | 13,837 | 1,978 | 0.11 % | —% |
| | 38,451 | 19,978 | 1.12 % | |
| Total investment portfolio | \$1,809,995 | \$1,786,268 | 100.00 % | |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| At December 31, 2017 | Amortized Cost | Net Carrying Amount | Percent of Portfolio | Weighted Average Coupon |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Loans held for investment: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans ⁽¹⁾ | \$1,290,150 | \$1,284,822 | 79.94 % | 6.09% |
| Investment securities available-for-sale: | | | | |
| CMBS | 210,806 | 211,579 | 13.17 % | 4.35% |
| ABS | 259 | 158 | 0.01 % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| | 211,065 | 211,737 | 13.18 % | |
| Investment securities, trading: | | | | |
| Structured notes | 2,891 | 178 | 0.01 % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Loans held for sale: | | | | |
| Syndicated corporate loans ⁽³⁾ | 13 | 13 | — % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Other investments: | | | | |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 12,051 | 12,051 | 0.75 % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Direct financing leases ⁽⁴⁾ | 886 | 151 | 0.01 % | 5.66% |
| | 12,937 | 12,202 | 0.76 % | |
| Other assets held for sale: | | | | |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽⁵⁾ | 63,783 | 61,841 | 3.85 % | 1.64% |
| Middle market loans ⁽⁶⁾ | 41,199 | 29,308 | 1.82 % | 5.06% |
| Life settlement contracts | 5,130 | 5,130 | 0.32 % | N/A ⁽⁷⁾ |
| Residential mortgage loans | 1,913 | 1,913 | 0.12 % | 3.92% |
| | 112,025 | 98,192 | 6.11 % | |
| Total investment portfolio | \$1,629,081 | \$1,607,144 | 100.00 % | |

(1) Net carrying amount includes an allowance for loan losses of \$4.5 million and \$5.3 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(2) At June 30, 2018, two legacy CRE loans with total amortized costs and net carrying amounts of \$28.3 million were reclassified to CRE whole loans as it is now our intent to hold these loans to maturity.

(3) The fair value option was elected for syndicated corporate loans held for sale.

(4) Net carrying amount includes allowance for lease losses of \$735,000 at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(5) Net carrying amount includes lower of cost or market value adjustments of \$6.6 million and \$1.9 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(6) Net carrying amount includes lower of cost or market value adjustments of \$11.9 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(7) There are no stated rates associated with these investments.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

CRE loans and syndicated corporate loans. The following is a summary of our loans (dollars in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| Description | Quantity | Principal | Unamortized (Discount) Premium, net ⁽¹⁾ | Amortized Cost | Allowance for Loan Losses | Carrying Value ⁽²⁾ | Contractual Interest Rates | Maturity Dates ⁽³⁾⁽⁴⁾⁽⁵⁾ |
|--|----------|-------------|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|--|
| At June 30, 2018: CRE loans held for investment: | | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽⁶⁾⁽⁷⁾ | 78 | \$1,434,572 | \$ (7,916) | \$1,426,656 | \$ (4,529) | \$1,422,127 | 1M LIBOR plus 2.50% to 1M LIBOR plus 6.25% | July 2018 to July 2021 |
| Mezzanine loan | 1 | 4,700 | — | 4,700 | — | 4,700 | 10.00% | June 2028 |
| Preferred equity investment ⁽⁸⁾⁽⁹⁾ | 1 | 19,374 | (183) | 19,191 | — | 19,191 | 11.50% | April 2025 |
| Total CRE loans held for investment | | 1,458,646 | (8,099) | 1,450,547 | (4,529) | 1,446,018 | | |
| Total loans | | \$1,458,646 | \$ (8,099) | \$1,450,547 | \$ (4,529) | \$1,446,018 | | |
| At December 31, 2017: CRE loans held for investment: | | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans ⁽⁶⁾ | 70 | \$1,297,164 | \$ (7,014) | \$1,290,150 | \$ (5,328) | \$1,284,822 | 1M LIBOR plus 3.60% to 1M LIBOR plus 6.25% | February 2018 to January 2021 |
| Total CRE loans held for investment | | 1,297,164 | (7,014) | 1,290,150 | (5,328) | 1,284,822 | | |
| Syndicated corporate loans ⁽¹⁰⁾ | 2 | 13 | — | 13 | — | 13 | N/A | N/A |
| Total loans held for sale | | 13 | — | 13 | — | 13 | | |
| Total loans | | \$1,297,177 | \$ (7,014) | \$1,290,163 | \$ (5,328) | \$1,284,835 | | |

Amounts include unamortized loan origination fees of \$7.6 million and \$6.7 million and deferred amendment fees (1) of \$482,000 and \$268,000 being amortized over the life of the loans at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(2) Substantially all loans are pledged as collateral under various borrowings at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

(3)

Maturity dates exclude contractual extension options, subject to the satisfaction of certain terms, that may be available to the borrowers.

- (4) Maturity dates exclude one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

- (5) Maturity dates exclude one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, in maturity default and performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.

The loan was classified as an asset held for sale and in maturity default at December 31, 2017.

- (6) Whole loans had \$88.7 million and \$84.1 million in unfunded loan commitments at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. These unfunded loan commitments are advanced as the borrowers formally request additional funding, as permitted under the loan agreement, and any necessary approvals have been obtained.

- (7) At June 30, 2018, two legacy CRE loans with amortized costs of \$28.3 million were reclassified to whole loans from assets held for sale as it is now our intent to hold these loans to maturity.

- (8) The interest rate on our preferred equity investment pays currently at 8.00%. The remaining interest is deferred until maturity.

- (9) Beginning in April 2023, we have the right to unilaterally force the sale of the underlying property.

- (10) All syndicated corporate loans are second lien loans and are accounted for under the fair value option.

At June 30, 2018, approximately 31.2%, 24.0% and 13.1% of our CRE loan portfolio was concentrated in the Southwest, Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively, based on carrying value, as defined by the National Council of Real Estate Investment Fiduciaries ("NCREIF"). At December 31, 2017, approximately 28.0%, 24.3%, and 12.5% of our CRE loan portfolio was concentrated in the Southwest, Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively, based on carrying value.

CMBS. During the six months ended June 30, 2018, we purchased 20 CMBS positions with aggregate face values of \$121.4 million, at a cost of \$113.8 million, and received paydowns of \$8.5 million. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the remaining discount to be accreted into income over the remaining lives of the securities was \$46.1 million and \$39.8 million, respectively. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the remaining premium to be amortized into income over the remaining lives of the securities was \$64,000 and \$32,000, respectively. These securities are classified as available-for-sale and carried at their fair value.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The following table summarizes our CMBS investments at fair value (in thousands, except amounts in the footnote):

| | Fair Value at December 31, 2017 | Net Purchases (Sales) ⁽¹⁾ | Net Upgrades (Downgrades) | Paydowns | MTM Change on Same Ratings | Fair Value at June 30, 2018 |
|---------------------------|--|--|------------------------------|------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Moody's ratings category: | | | | | | |
| Aaa | \$ 8,390 | \$ — | \$ — | \$(1,150) | \$(98) | \$ 7,142 |
| Aa1 through Aa3 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| A1 through A3 | 1,563 | — | — | (1,564) | 1 | — |
| Baa1 through Baa3 | 8,432 | 7,974 | — | (2,177) | (83) | 14,146 |
| Ba1 through Ba3 | 10,866 | — | — | (1,893) | (60) | 8,913 |
| B1 through B3 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Caa1 through Caa3 | 426 | — | — | — | (3) | 423 |
| Ca through C | 191 | — | — | — | (56) | 135 |
| Non-Rated | 181,711 | 105,809 | — | (1,738) | 1,883 | 287,665 |
| Total | \$ 211,579 | \$ 113,783 | \$ — | \$(8,522) | \$ 1,584 | \$ 318,424 |
| S&P ratings category: | | | | | | |
| AAA | \$ 1,318 | \$ — | \$ — | \$(1,023) | \$ — | \$ 295 |
| AA+ through AA- | 4,371 | — | — | (917) | (17) | 3,437 |
| A+ through A- | 11,593 | — | — | (3,242) | (42) | 8,309 |
| BBB+ through BBB- | 22,502 | 7,974 | — | (283) | 443 | 30,636 |
| BB+ through BB- | 86,259 | 5,000 | — | (1,657) | 552 | 90,154 |
| B+ through B- | — | 15,000 | — | — | 19 | 15,019 |
| CCC+ through CCC- | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| D | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Non-Rated | 85,536 | 85,809 | — | (1,400) | 629 | 170,574 |
| Total | \$ 211,579 | \$ 113,783 | \$ — | \$(8,522) | \$ 1,584 | \$ 318,424 |
| Fitch ratings category: | | | | | | |
| AAA | \$ 6,482 | \$ — | \$ 1,028 | \$(1,787) | \$(72) | \$ 5,651 |
| AA+ through AA- | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| A+ through A- | 2,881 | — | — | (2,587) | 1 | 295 |
| BBB+ through BBB- | 40,577 | 21,494 | 862 | (146) | 966 | 63,753 |
| BB+ through BB- | 16,712 | — | (1,890) | (2,019) | (54) | 12,749 |
| B+ through B- | 43,191 | 19,882 | — | (244) | 81 | 62,910 |
| CCC | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| CC through D | 191 | — | — | — | (56) | 135 |
| Non-Rated | 101,545 | 72,407 | — | (1,739) | 718 | 172,931 |
| Total | \$ 211,579 | \$ 113,783 | \$ — | \$(8,522) | \$ 1,584 | \$ 318,424 |

During the six months ended June 30, 2018, we acquired \$41.0 million of CMBS, at a cost of approximately \$33.4 million, with a weighted average spread, based on cost, of 3.55% over the interpolated interest rate swap curve and (1) \$80.4 million of CMBS, at a cost of approximately \$80.4 million, with a weighted average spread, based on face value, of 2.46% over LIBOR.

ABS. In March 2018, we sold our remaining two ABS investment securities available-for-sale with total amortized costs of \$265,000, receiving proceeds of \$48,000. At June 30, 2018, we did not hold any ABS investment securities available-for-sale. At December 31, 2017, we held two ABS investment securities available-for-sale with total fair values of \$158,000.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

71

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The following table summarizes our ABS at fair value (in thousands):

| | Fair Value at December 31, 2017 | Net Purchases (Sales) | MTM Change on Same Ratings | Fair Value at June 30, 2018 |
|--|--|-----------------------------|--|--|
|--|--|-----------------------------|--|--|

Moody's ratings category:

| | | | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|
| Non-Rated | \$ 158 | \$ (259) | \$ 101 | \$ — |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|

S&P ratings category:

| | | | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|
| Non-Rated | \$ 158 | \$ (259) | \$ 101 | \$ — |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|

Fitch ratings category:

| | | | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|
| Non-Rated | \$ 158 | \$ (259) | \$ 101 | \$ — |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|------|

Investment securities, trading. Structured notes are CLO debt securities collateralized by syndicated corporate loans.

The following table summarizes our structured notes classified as investment securities, trading, and carried at fair value (in thousands, except number of securities):

| | Number of Securities | Amortized Cost | Unrealized Gains | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Structured notes | 1 | \$ 1,000 | \$ | —\$(1,000) | \$ — |

At December 31, 2017:

| | | | | | |
|------------------|---|----------|----|-------------|--------|
| Structured notes | 4 | \$ 2,891 | \$ | —\$(2,713) | \$ 178 |
|------------------|---|----------|----|-------------|--------|

We did not sell any investment securities during the three months ended June 30, 2018 and two investment securities resulting in realized losses of \$5,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2018. We did not sell any investment securities during the three months ended June 30, 2017 and one investment security resulting in a realized gain of \$9,000 during the six months ended June 30, 2017.

We received a payoff on one investment security resulting in a realized loss of \$3,000 during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Investment in unconsolidated entities. The following table shows our investments in unconsolidated entities at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 and equity in earnings (losses) of unconsolidated entities for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| | Ownership % at June 30, 2018 | June 30, December 31, | | Equity in Earnings (Losses) of Unconsolidated Entities | | | |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| | | 2018 | 2017 | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 |
| Pelium Capital ⁽¹⁾ | 80.2% | \$ 154 | \$ 10,503 | \$75 | \$82 | \$(230) | \$(77) |
| RCM Global | 63.8% | 80 | — | (6) | (166) | 7 | (170) |
| RRE VIP Borrower, LLC ⁽²⁾ | —% | — | — | — | 37 | — | 37 |
| Pearlmark Mezzanine Realty Partners IV, L.P. ⁽³⁾ | —% | — | — | — | (193) | — | 165 |
| Investment in LCC Preferred Stock ⁽⁴⁾ | —% | — | — | — | 122 | — | 288 |
| Subtotal | | 234 | 10,503 | 69 | (118) | (223) | 243 |
| Investment in RCT I and II ⁽⁵⁾ | 3.0% | 1,548 | 1,548 | (806) | (663) | (1,530) | (1,300) |
| Total | | \$ 1,782 | \$ 12,051 | \$(737) | \$(781) | \$(1,753) | \$(1,057) |

(1) During the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, we received distributions of \$10.2 million and \$13.6 million, respectively, on our investment in Pelium Capital Partners, L.P. ("Pelium Capital").

We sold our investment in RRE VIP Borrower in December 2014. Earnings for the three and six months ended (2) June 30, 2017 are related to insurance premium refunds with respect to the underlying sold properties in the portfolio.

(3) We sold our investment in Pearlmark Mezzanine Realty Partners IV, L.P. ("Pearlmark Mezz") in May 2017.

(4) Our investment in LEAF Commercial Capital, Inc. ("LCC") liquidated in July 2017 as a result of the sale of LCC.

(5) For the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, distributions from the trusts are recorded in interest expense on our consolidated statements of operations as the investments are accounted for under the cost method.

During the six months ended June 30, 2018, investments held by Pelium Capital and RCM Global were substantially liquidated.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Financing Receivables

The following tables show the activity in the allowance for loan and lease losses for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and year ended December 31, 2017 and the allowance for loan and lease losses and recorded investments in loans and leases at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

| | Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | | Year Ended December 31, 2017 | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Syndicated Corporate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses: | | | | | | | |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses at beginning of period | \$5,328 | \$ 735 | \$6,063 | \$3,829 | \$ — | \$ 465 | \$4,294 |
| Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease losses, net | (799) |) — | (799) |) 1,499 | 3 | 270 | 1,772 |
| Loans charged-off | — | — | — | — | (3) | — | (3) |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses at end of period | \$4,529 | \$ 735 | \$5,264 | \$5,328 | \$ — | \$ 735 | \$6,063 |
| | | | | | | | |
| | June 30, 2018 | | | December 31, 2017 | | | |
| | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total | Commercial Real Estate Loans | Syndicated Corporate Loans | Direct Financing Leases | Total |
| Allowance for loan and lease losses ending balance: | | | | | | | |
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$2,500 | \$ 735 | \$3,235 | \$2,500 | \$ — | \$ 735 | \$3,235 |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | \$2,029 | \$ — | \$2,029 | \$2,828 | \$ — | \$ — | \$2,828 |
| Loans acquired with deteriorated credit quality | \$— | \$ — | \$— | \$— | \$ — | \$ — | \$— |
| Loans and Leases: | | | | | | | |
| Amortized cost ending balance: | | | | | | | |
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$30,891 | \$ 801 | \$31,692 | \$7,000 | \$ — | \$ 886 | \$7,886 |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | \$1,419,656 | \$ — | \$1,419,656 | \$1,283,150 | \$ — | \$ — | \$1,283,150 |
| Loans acquired with deteriorated credit quality | \$— | \$ — | \$— | \$— | \$ — | \$ — | \$— |

Credit quality indicators

Commercial Real Estate Loans

CRE loans are collateralized by a diversified mix of real estate properties and are assessed for credit quality based on the collective evaluation of several factors, including but not limited to: collateral performance relative to underwritten plan, time since origination, current implied and/or reunderwritten loan-to-collateral value ratios, loan structure and exit plan. Depending on the loan's performance against these various factors, loans are rated on a scale from 1 to 5, with loans rated 1 representing loans with the highest credit quality and loans rated 5 representing loans with lowest credit quality. The factors evaluated provide general criteria to monitor credit migration in our loan portfolio, as such, a loan's rating may improve or worsen, depending on new information received.

The criteria set forth below should be used as general guidelines, and, therefore, not every loan will have all of the characteristics described in each category below. Loans that are performing according to their underwritten plans generally will not require an allowance for loan loss.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

74

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

| Risk Rating | Risk Characteristics |
|-------------|--|
| 1 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance has surpassed underwritten expectations. • Occupancy is stabilized, the property has had a history of consistently high occupancy, and the property has a diverse and high quality tenant mix. |
| 2 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance is consistent with underwritten expectations and covenants and performance criteria are being met or exceeded. • Occupancy is stabilized, near stabilized or is on track with underwriting. |
| 3 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance lags behind underwritten expectations. • Occupancy is not stabilized and the property has some tenancy rollover. |
| 4 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance significantly lags behind underwritten expectations. Performance criteria and loan covenants have required occasional waivers. • Occupancy is not stabilized and the property has a large amount of tenancy rollover. |
| 5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property performance is significantly worse than underwritten expectations. The loan is not in compliance with loan covenants and performance criteria and is in default. Expected sale proceeds would not be sufficient to pay off the loan at maturity. • The property has material vacancy and significant rollover of remaining tenants. • An updated appraisal is required. |

All CRE loans are evaluated for any credit deterioration by debt asset management and certain finance personnel on at least a quarterly basis.

Whole loans are first individually evaluated for impairment; and to the extent not deemed impaired, a general reserve is established.

The allowance for loan loss is computed as (i) 1.5% of the aggregate face values of loans rated as a 3, plus (ii) 5.0% of the aggregate face values of loans rated as a 4, plus (iii) specific allowances measured and determined on loans individually evaluated, which are loans rated as a 5. While the overall risk rating is generally not the sole factor used in determining whether a loan is impaired, a loan with a higher overall risk rating would tend to have more adverse indicators of impairment, and therefore would be more likely to experience a credit loss.

The Company's mezzanine loan and preferred equity investment are evaluated individually for impairment.

Credit risk profiles of CRE loans at amortized cost and legacy CRE loans held for sale at the lower of cost or fair value were as follows (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | Rating 1 | Rating 2 | Rating 3 (1) | Rating 4 | Rating 5 (2) | Held for Sale (3) | Total |
|---------------------------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 13,000 | \$ 1,271,509 | \$ 130,302 | \$ 4,845 | \$ 7,000 | \$ — | \$ 1,426,656 |
| Mezzanine loan (4) | — | 4,700 | — | — | — | — | 4,700 |
| Preferred equity investment (4) | — | 19,191 | — | — | — | — | 19,191 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | — | — | — | 18,000 | 18,000 |
| | \$ 13,000 | \$ 1,295,400 | \$ 130,302 | \$ 4,845 | \$ 7,000 | \$ 18,000 | \$ 1,468,547 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 65,589 | \$ 1,040,883 | \$ 171,841 | \$ 4,837 | \$ 7,000 | \$ — | \$ 1,290,150 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | — | — | — | 61,841 | 61,841 |
| | \$ 65,589 | \$ 1,040,883 | \$ 171,841 | \$ 4,837 | \$ 7,000 | \$ 61,841 | \$ 1,351,991 |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, that was in maturity default at June 30, 2018.

- (1) The loan is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.
- (2) Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, that was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.
- (3) Includes one and two legacy CRE loans that were in default with total carrying values of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.
- (4) Our mezzanine loan and preferred equity investment are evaluated individually for impairment.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

75

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, we had one CRE whole loan designated as an impaired loan with a risk rating of 5 due to short term vacancy/tenant concerns and a past due maturity of February 2017. The loan had an amortized cost of \$7.0 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. We obtained an appraisal of the collateral in 2016, indicating a fair value of \$4.5 million, which we relied upon as a practical expedient for determining the value of the loan at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. No additional provision was recorded on the loan for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. This loan was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

At June 30, 2018, we had one legacy CRE loan and one mezzanine loan included in assets held for sale with total carrying values of \$18.0 million, comprising total amortized cost bases of \$24.6 million less a valuation allowance of \$6.6 million. The mezzanine loan held for sale had no fair value at June 30, 2018.

At December 31, 2017, we had four legacy CRE loans and one mezzanine loan included in assets held for sale with total carrying values of \$61.8 million, comprising total amortized cost bases of \$63.8 million less a valuation allowance of \$1.9 million. The mezzanine loan held for sale had no fair value at December 31, 2017.

In June 2018, we sold the note and deed of trust of one legacy CRE loan for \$12.0 million, resulting in a realized gain of \$1.0 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

At June 30, 2018, we reclassified two legacy CRE loans back into the CRE loan portfolio at the lesser of each loan's cost or market value, totaling \$28.3 million, as we now intend to hold the loans to maturity. The loans are classified as CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets. One reclassified loan with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million was in maturity default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. The loan is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement.

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the one remaining legacy CRE loan had a carrying value of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million, respectively. An additional fair value adjustment of \$4.7 million, which included protective advances of \$172,000, to reduce the carrying value was recognized during the six months ended June 30, 2018. This adjustment was recorded based on the receipt of updated appraisals in April 2018 and was recognized in fair value adjustments on financial assets held for sale on our consolidated statements of operations. No valuation adjustments were recognized for the three months ended June 30, 2018, nor the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. The loan is currently in default.

At December 31, 2017, 45.8%, 36.4% and 17.8% of our legacy CRE loans were concentrated in retail, hotel and office, respectively, based on carrying value. Of these loans, 82.2% and 17.8% were within the Pacific and Mountain regions, respectively.

Except as previously discussed, all of our CRE loans, our mezzanine loan and our preferred equity investment were current with respect to contractual principal and interest at June 30, 2018.

Direct Financing Leases

We recorded no provision for lease losses against the value of our direct financing leases during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. We recorded a provision for lease losses of \$131,000 and \$270,000 during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively. We held \$66,000 and \$151,000 of direct financing leases, net of reserves, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Loan Portfolios Aging Analysis

The following table presents the CRE loan portfolio aging analysis as of the dates indicated at amortized cost and legacy CRE loans held for sale at the lower of cost or fair value (in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | 30-59 Days | 60-89 Days | Greater than 90 Days (1)(2) | Total Past Due (3) | Current | Total Loans Receivable (4) | Total Loans > 90 Days and Accruing (2) |
|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$— | \$ | -\$18,516 | \$18,516 | \$1,408,140 | \$1,426,656 | \$11,516 |
| Mezzanine loan | — | — | — | — | 4,700 | 4,700 | — |
| Preferred equity investment | — | — | — | — | 19,191 | 19,191 | — |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | — | — | 18,000 | 18,000 | — | 18,000 | — |
| Total loans | \$— | \$ | -\$36,516 | \$36,516 | \$1,432,031 | \$1,468,547 | \$11,516 |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$— | \$ | -\$7,000 | \$7,000 | \$1,283,150 | \$1,290,150 | \$— |
| Legacy CRE loans held for sale | 11,516 | — | 11,000 | 22,516 | 39,325 | 61,841 | — |
| Total loans | \$11,516 | \$ | -\$18,000 | \$29,516 | \$1,322,475 | \$1,351,991 | \$— |

(1) Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$7.0 million, that was in default at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Includes one whole loan, with an amortized cost of \$11.5 million, that was in maturity default at June 30, 2018.

(2) The loan is performing with respect to debt service due in accordance with a forbearance agreement at June 30, 2018.

(3) Includes one and two legacy CRE loans that were in default with total carrying values of \$18.0 million and \$22.5 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

(4) Excludes direct financing leases of \$66,000 and \$151,000, net of reserves, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Impaired Loans

The following tables show impaired loans as of the dates indicated (in thousands):

| | Recorded Balance | Unpaid Principal Balance | Specific Allowance | Average Investment in Impaired Loans | Interest Income Recognized |
|---|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| Loans without a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Loans with a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |
| Total: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |
| At December 31, 2017: | | | | | |
| Loans without a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Loans with a specific valuation allowance: | | | | | |
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ — |
| Total: | | | | | |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|-------------|----------|----|---|
| Whole loans | \$ 7,000 | \$ 7,000 | \$ (2,500) | \$ 7,000 | \$ | — |
| Troubled-Debt Restructurings ("TDR") | | | | | | |

There were no TDRs for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

77

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Restricted Cash

At June 30, 2018, we had restricted cash of \$10.1 million, which consisted of \$9.2 million of restricted cash within six of our eight consolidated securitizations, \$739,000 held as margin and \$86,000 held in various reserve accounts. At December 31, 2017, we had restricted cash of \$22.9 million, which consisted of \$20.8 million of restricted cash within six of our seven consolidated securitizations, \$1.9 million held as margin, \$100,000 held in escrow and \$25,000 held in various reserve accounts. The decrease of \$12.8 million is primarily attributable to paydowns and interest payments on the RCC 2017-CRE5 notes payable, future fundings made by RCC 2017-CRE5 and the net receipt of previously posted margin from our interest rate swap counterparty.

Accrued Interest Receivable

The following table summarizes our accrued interest receivable at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

| | June 30, December 31, Net | | |
|--|---------------------------|----------|--------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Change |
| Accrued interest receivable from loans | \$ 6,207 | \$ 6,096 | \$ 111 |
| Accrued interest receivable from securities | 929 | 756 | 173 |
| Accrued interest receivable from escrow and sweep accounts | 21 | 7 | 14 |
| Total | \$ 7,157 | \$ 6,859 | \$ 298 |

The \$298,000 increase in accrued interest receivable is primarily attributable to new loan production, an increase in one-month LIBOR and the purchase of CMBS, offset by loan payoffs and the sale of our remaining two ABS during the six months ended June 30, 2018.

Other Assets

The following table summarizes our other assets at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands):

| | June 30, December 31, Net | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|----------|-----------|
| | 2018 | 2017 | Change |
| Tax receivables and prepaid taxes | \$ 3,243 | \$ 4,286 | \$(1,043) |
| Management fees receivable | — | 2,029 | (2,029) |
| Other receivables | 812 | 495 | 317 |
| Fixed assets - non real estate | 153 | 157 | (4) |
| Other | 1,017 | 484 | 533 |
| Total | \$ 5,225 | \$ 7,451 | \$(2,226) |

The \$2.2 million decrease in other assets is attributable to a \$2.0 million decrease in management fees receivable, due to amortization and the reduction of our right to the remaining \$1.5 million of collateral management fee rebate assets to zero in exchange for cash in the second quarter of 2018, and a \$1.0 million decrease in tax receivables and prepaid taxes, due to tax refunds of \$1.1 million received during the six months ended June 30, 2018. The decrease in other assets was offset by a \$533,000 increase in other, primarily attributable to the payment of \$1.1 million of premiums for the renewal of our directors and officers liability insurance.

Deferred Tax Asset, Net

At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, our net deferred tax asset was zero. The future realization of deferred tax assets depends upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which those temporary differences become deductible. During 2017, we recorded a full valuation allowance against our net deferred tax assets as we believed it was more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets would not be realized. This assessment was based on our cumulative historical losses and uncertainties as to the amount of taxable income that would be generated in future years. In recognition of this risk, we have recorded a full valuation allowance of \$10.4 million and \$9.9 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. We will continue to evaluate our ability to realize the tax benefits associated with deferred tax assets by analyzing forecasted taxable income using both historical and projected future operating results, the reversal of existing temporary differences, taxable income in prior carry back years (if permitted) and the availability of tax planning strategies.

In accordance with Securities and Exchange Commission staff issued guidance, a company must reflect the income tax effects of those aspects of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") for which the accounting is complete. We

were able to determine a reasonable provisional estimate that has been recorded in the consolidated financial statements. Our accounting for the impact of the Tax Act is complete.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

78

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Core and Non-Core Asset Classes

Our investment strategy targets the following core asset class:

CRE/Core Asset Class Principal Investments

Commercial real estate-related assets

- First mortgage loans, which we refer to as whole loans;
- First priority interests in first mortgage loans, which we refer to as A notes;
- Subordinated interests in first mortgage loans, which we refer to as B notes;
- Mezzanine debt related to CRE that is senior to the borrower's equity position but subordinated to other third-party debt;
- Preferred equity investments related to CRE that are subordinate to first mortgage loans and are not collateralized by the property underlying the investment;
- CMBS; and
- Other CRE investments.

In November 2016, we received approval from our Board to execute the Plan to focus our strategy on CRE debt investments. The Plan contemplates disposing of certain legacy CRE debt investments, exiting underperforming non-core asset classes and establishing a dividend policy based on sustainable earnings. Legacy CRE loans are loans underwritten prior to 2010. The non-core asset classes in which we have historically invested are described below:

Non-Core Asset Classes Principal Investments

Residential real estate-related assets

- Residential mortgage loans; and
- Residential mortgage-backed securities, which comprise our available-for-sale portfolio.

Commercial finance assets

- Middle market secured corporate loans and preferred equity investments;
- ABS, backed by senior secured corporate loans;
- Debt tranches of collateralized debt obligations, which we refer to as CDOs, and CLOs, respectively, and sometimes, collectively, as CDOs;
- Structured note investments, which comprise our trading securities portfolio;
- Syndicated corporate loans; and
- Preferred equity investment in a commercial leasing enterprise that originates and holds small- and middle-ticket commercial direct financing leases and notes.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The table below summarizes the amortized cost and net carrying amount of our investment portfolio at June 30, 2018, classified by asset type (in thousands, except percentages and amounts in footnotes):

| At June 30, 2018 | Amortized Cost | Net Carrying Amount | Percent of Portfolio | Weighted Average Coupon |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Core Assets: | | | | |
| CRE whole loans ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | \$1,398,315 | \$1,393,786 | 78.10 % | 6.43% |
| CRE mezzanine loan and preferred equity investment ⁽²⁾ | 23,891 | 23,891 | 1.34 % | 11.21% |
| CMBS ⁽³⁾ | 317,414 | 318,424 | 17.84 % | 4.44% |
| Total Core Assets | 1,739,620 | 1,736,101 | 97.28 % | |
| Non-Core Assets: | | | | |
| Structured notes ⁽⁴⁾ | 1,000 | — | — % | N/A ⁽¹¹⁾ |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities ⁽⁵⁾ | 234 | 234 | 0.01 % | N/A ⁽¹¹⁾ |
| Direct financing leases ⁽⁶⁾ | 801 | 66 | — % | 5.66% |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽⁷⁾⁽⁸⁾ | 52,955 | 46,341 | 2.60 % | 2.32% |
| Middle market loan held for sale ⁽⁹⁾⁽¹⁰⁾ | 13,837 | 1,978 | 0.11 % | N/A ⁽¹¹⁾ |
| Total Non-Core Assets | 68,827 | 48,619 | 2.72 % | |
| Total investment portfolio | \$1,808,447 | \$1,784,720 | 100.00 % | |

(1) Net carrying amount includes an allowance for loan losses of \$4.5 million at June 30, 2018.

(2) Classified as CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets.

(3) Classified as investment securities available-for-sale on the consolidated balance sheets.

(4) Classified as investment securities, trading on the consolidated balance sheets.

(5) Classified as investments in unconsolidated entities on the consolidated balance sheets.

(6) Net carrying amount includes an allowance for lease losses of \$735,000 at June 30, 2018.

(7) A legacy CRE loan with an amortized cost of \$24.6 million and a net carrying amount of \$18.0 million is classified in assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheets. At June 30, 2018, two legacy CRE loans with total amortized costs and net carrying amounts of \$28.3 million were reclassified to CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets as it is now our intent to hold these loans to maturity.

(8) Net carrying amount includes a lower of cost or market value adjustment of \$6.6 million at June 30, 2018.

(9) Classified as assets held for sale on the consolidated balance sheets.

(10) Net carrying amount includes the lower of cost or market value adjustment of \$11.9 million at June 30, 2018.

(11) There are no stated rates associated with these investments.

Assets and Liabilities Held for Sale

The assets and liabilities of business segments classified as discontinued operations and other assets and liabilities classified as held for sale are reported separately in the accompanying consolidated financial statements and are summarized as follows at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 (in thousands, except amounts in the footnote):

| | June 30, 2018 | December 31, 2017 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| ASSETS | | |
| Restricted cash | \$— | \$ 138 |
| Accrued interest receivable | — | 67 |
| Loans held for sale ⁽¹⁾ | 19,978 | 93,063 |
| Other assets ⁽²⁾ | 978 | 14,450 |
| Total assets held for sale | \$20,956 | \$ 107,718 |
| LIABILITIES | | |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | |
|--|---------|-----------|
| Accounts payable and other liabilities | \$2,421 | \$ 10,283 |
| Management fee payable | — | 56 |
| Accrued interest payable | — | 3 |
| Total liabilities held for sale | \$2,421 | \$ 10,342 |

Includes a directly originated middle market loan with a carrying value of \$2.0 million at June 30, 2018 and (1) December 31, 2017. In July 2018 substantially all of the assets of the borrower were sold, resulting in \$2.1 million of loan repayments.

(2) Includes our investment in life settlement contracts of \$5.1 million at December 31, 2017, which were transferred to held for sale in the fourth quarter of 2016. There were no life settlement contracts remaining at June 30, 2018.

(Back to Index)

80

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Hedging Instruments

A significant market risk to us is interest rate risk. Interest rates are highly sensitive to many factors, including governmental monetary and tax policies, domestic and international economic and political considerations and other factors beyond our control. Changes in the general level of interest rates can affect net interest income, which is the difference between the interest income earned on interest-earning assets and the interest expense incurred in connection with the interest-bearing liabilities, by affecting the spread between the interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities. Changes in the level of interest rates also can affect the value of our interest-earning assets and our ability to realize gains from the sale of these assets. A decline in the value of our interest-earning assets pledged as collateral for borrowings could result in the counterparties demanding additional collateral pledges or liquidation of some of the existing collateral to reduce borrowing levels.

We seek to manage the extent to which net income changes as a fluctuation of changes in interest rates by matching adjustable-rate assets with variable-rate borrowings. We seek to mitigate the potential impact on net income (loss) of adverse fluctuations in interest rates incurred on our borrowings by entering into hedging agreements.

We classify our interest rate hedges as cash flow hedges, which are hedges that eliminate the risk of changes in the cash flows of a financial asset or liability. We record changes in fair value of derivatives designated and effective as cash flow hedges in accumulated other comprehensive income, and record changes in fair value of derivatives designated and ineffective as cash flow hedges in earnings.

We were also exposed to foreign currency exchange risk, a form of risk that arises from the change in price of one currency against another. However, substantially all of our revenues are transacted in U.S. dollars. To address this market risk, we generally hedged our foreign currency-denominated exposures (typically investments in debt instruments, including forecasted principal and interest payments) with foreign currency forward contracts. We classified these hedges as fair value hedges, which are hedges that mitigate the risk of changes in the fair values of assets, liabilities and certain types of firm commitments. We recorded changes in the fair value of derivatives designated and effective as fair value hedges in earnings offset by corresponding changes in the fair values of the hedged items. As we continue to further implement the Plan, as outlined in the "Overview" section, we eliminated our foreign currency exchange risk in the first quarter of 2018.

The following tables present the fair value of our derivative financial instruments as well as their classification on our consolidated balance sheets and on the consolidated statements of operations for the periods presented:

Fair Value of Derivative Instruments at June 30, 2018 (in thousands)

| | Asset Derivatives | | |
|--|-----------------------|---|------------|
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 52,610 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 2,273 |
| | Liability Derivatives | | |
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 20,216 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 67 |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | \$ 72,826 | Accumulated other comprehensive income | \$ 2,206 |

(1) Interest rate swap contracts are accounted for as cash flow hedges.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Fair Value of Derivative Instruments at December 31, 2017 (in thousands, except amount in footnotes)

| Asset Derivatives | | | |
|---|-----------------|--|------------|
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging ⁽¹⁾ | \$ 41,750 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 602 |
| Liability Derivatives | | | |
| | Notional Amount | Consolidated Balance Sheets Location | Fair Value |
| Forward contracts - foreign currency, hedging ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ | \$ 3,602 | Derivatives, at fair value | \$ 76 |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | \$ 41,750 | Accumulated other comprehensive income | \$ 602 |

(1) Interest rate swap contracts are accounted for as cash flow hedges.

(2) Foreign currency forward contracts are accounted for as fair value hedges.

(3) Notional amount is presented on a currency converted basis. The base currency notional amount of our foreign currency hedging forward contracts in a liability position was €3.0 million at December 31, 2017.

The Effect of Derivative Instruments on the Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 (in thousands)

| Derivatives | | Realized and Unrealized Gain (Loss) ⁽¹⁾ |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| | Consolidated Statements of Operations Location | |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | Interest expense | \$ (80) |

(1) Negative values indicate a decrease to the associated consolidated statements of operations line items.

The Effect of Derivative Instruments on the Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Six Months Ended June 30, 2017 (in thousands)

| Derivatives | | Realized and Unrealized Gain (Loss) ⁽¹⁾ |
|---|---|--|
| | Consolidated Statements of Operations Location | |
| Interest rate swap contracts, hedging | Interest expense | \$ (20) |
| Forward contracts - foreign currency, hedging | Net realized and unrealized (loss) gain on investment securities available-for-sale and loans and derivatives | \$ (1,479) |

(1) Negative values indicate a decrease to the associated consolidated statements of operations line items.

At June 30, 2018, we had fifteen swap contracts outstanding in order to hedge against adverse rate movements against our CMBS borrowings. Our interest rate hedges at June 30, 2018 were as follows (in thousands except percentages):

| Benchmark Rate | Notional Value | Strike Rate | Effective Date | Maturity Date | Fair Value |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|------------|
|----------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|------------|

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|----------|-------|------------|------------|---------|
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | \$7,500 | 1.99% | 6/18/2017 | 10/18/2025 | \$395 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 3,010 | 2.02% | 6/18/2017 | 1/18/2026 | 156 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 2,525 | 1.94% | 7/18/2017 | 10/18/2025 | 140 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 3,640 | 2.15% | 8/18/2017 | 3/18/2027 | 185 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 4,025 | 2.09% | 8/18/2017 | 10/18/2026 | 210 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 13,550 | 2.09% | 10/18/2017 | 9/18/2027 | 793 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 7,500 | 2.20% | 10/18/2017 | 9/18/2027 | 373 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 2,820 | 2.77% | 3/18/2018 | 3/18/2028 | 9 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 2,571 | 2.86% | 5/18/2018 | 3/18/2028 | (12) |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 3,720 | 2.86% | 5/18/2018 | 11/18/2025 | (25) |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 7,325 | 2.80% | 7/18/2018 | 1/18/2026 | (12) |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 4,300 | 2.80% | 7/18/2018 | 1/18/2026 | (7) |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 2,300 | 2.85% | 7/18/2018 | 2/18/2027 | (11) |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 4,020 | 2.76% | 7/18/2018 | 7/18/2026 | 6 |
| Interest rate swap | One-month LIBOR | 4,020 | 2.76% | 7/18/2018 | 7/18/2026 | 6 |
| Total interest rate swaps | | \$72,826 | | | | \$2,206 |

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

82

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Repurchase and Credit Facilities

Borrowings under our repurchase agreements are guaranteed by us or one of our subsidiaries. The following table sets forth certain information with respect to our repurchase agreements (dollars in thousands, except amounts in footnotes):

| | June 30, 2018 | | | Weighted Average Interest Rate | December 31, 2017 | | | Weighted Average Interest Rate |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| | Outstanding Borrowings (1) | Value of Collateral | Number of Positions as Collateral | | Outstanding Borrowings (1) | Value of Collateral | Number of Positions as Collateral | |
| CRE - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. (2) | \$92,621 | \$146,705 | 8 | 4.09% | \$179,347 | \$268,003 | 19 | 3.68% |
| Morgan Stanley Bank, N.A. (3) | 67,947 | 108,629 | 5 | 4.68% | 112,151 | 164,122 | 9 | 4.05% |
| Barclays Bank PLC (4) | (1,782) | — | — | —% | — | — | — | —% |
| CMBS - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. | — | — | — | —% | 12,272 | 14,984 | 8 | 2.45% |
| Deutsche Bank AG (7) | — | — | — | —% | 15,356 | 23,076 | 14 | 3.53% |
| Trust Certificates - Term Repurchase Facilities | | | | | | | | |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2015 (5) | 26,624 | 89,121 | 2 | 7.57% | 26,548 | 89,121 | 2 | 6.98% |
| RSO Repo SPE Trust 2017 (6) | 47,093 | 118,780 | 2 | 6.02% | 49,596 | 125,254 | 2 | 5.43% |
| CMBS - Short-Term Repurchase Agreements | | | | | | | | |
| RBC Capital Markets, LLC | 156,643 | 207,291 | 22 | 3.48% | 72,131 | 97,745 | 6 | 2.77% |
| JP Morgan Securities LLC | 13,780 | 38,231 | 5 | 3.48% | 10,516 | 33,777 | 2 | 2.93% |
| Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. (7) | 13,667 | 17,132 | 11 | 3.43% | — | — | — | —% |
| Total | \$416,593 | \$725,889 | | | \$477,917 | \$816,082 | | |

(1) Outstanding borrowings includes accrued interest payable.

(2) Includes \$59,000 and \$565,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

- (3) Includes \$127,000 and \$448,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.
- (4) Includes \$1.8 million and \$0 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.
- (5) Includes \$59,000 and \$133,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.
- (6) Includes \$263,000 and \$320,000 of deferred debt issuance costs at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

In May 2018, the facility's term was rolled from a one-year basis, with extensions at the buyer's option, to a (7) three-month basis. At June 30, 2018, the facility was reclassified from CMBS - term repurchase facilities to CMBS - short term repurchase agreements.

We are in compliance with all financial covenants in each of the respective agreements at June 30, 2018.

CRE - Term Repurchase Facilities

In February 2012, one of our wholly-owned subsidiaries entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement (the "2012 Facility") with Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. ("Wells Fargo") to finance the origination of CRE loans. In July 2018, the subsidiary entered into an amended and restated master repurchase agreement (the "2018 Facility"), in exchange for an extension fee and other reasonable costs, that maintained the \$400.0 million maximum facility amount and extended the term of the facility to July 2020 with three one-year extension options exercisable at the Company's discretion. The 2018 Facility charges interest rates of one-month LIBOR plus spreads from 1.75% to 2.50%.

The 2018 Facility, consistent with the 2012 Facility, contains customary events of default. The remedies for such events of default are also customary for this type of transaction and include the acceleration of all our obligations to repay the purchase price for purchased assets.

The 2018 Facility, consistent with the 2012 Facility, also contains margin call provisions relating to a decline in the market value of a security. Under these circumstances, Wells Fargo may require us to transfer cash in an amount sufficient to eliminate any margin deficit resulting from such a decline.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Consistent with the guaranty agreement dated February 2012, we continue to guarantee the payment and performance of our subsidiaries' obligations to the lender through an amended and restated guaranty agreement dated in July 2018 (the "2018 Guaranty"), including all reasonable expenses that are incurred by the lender in connection with the enforcement of the 2018 Facility. The 2018 Guaranty includes covenants that, among other requirements, stipulate certain thresholds, including: required liquidity, required capital, total indebtedness to total equity, EBITDA to interest expense, and total indebtedness.

Securitizations

At June 30, 2018, we retain equity in seven of the securitizations we had executed, of which three had been substantially liquidated.

RCC 2015-CRE3

In August 2018, our subsidiary initiated the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE3.

RCC 2015-CRE4

In July 2018, our subsidiary exercised the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE4, and all of the outstanding senior notes were paid off from the payoff proceeds of certain of the securitizations's assets.

XAN 2018-RSO6

In June 2018, we closed XAN 2018-RSO6, a \$514.2 million CRE securitization transaction that provided financing for transitional CRE loans. XAN 2018-RSO6 issued a total of approximately \$405.0 million of senior notes at par to unrelated investors. A subsidiary of RCC Real Estate purchased 16.7% of the Class D senior notes and 100% of the Class E and Class F notes. In addition, a subsidiary of RCC Real Estate purchased an equity interest representing 100% of the outstanding preference shares. At June 30, 2018, the notes issued to third party investors had a weighted average interest rate of one-month LIBOR plus 1.10%. All of the notes issued mature in June 2035, although we have the right to call the notes any time after July 2020 until maturity.

Stockholders' Equity

Total stockholders' equity at June 30, 2018 was \$555.9 million and gave effect to \$2.2 million of net unrealized gains on our cash flow hedges and \$1.0 million of net unrealized gains on our available-for-sale portfolio, shown as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income. Stockholders' equity at December 31, 2017 was \$671.5 million and gave effect to \$602,000 of unrealized gains on our cash flow hedges and \$695,000, after tax, of net unrealized gains on our available-for-sale portfolio, shown as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income. The decrease in stockholders' equity during the six months ended June 30, 2018 was primarily attributable to the March 2018 redemption of all remaining shares of Series B Preferred Stock, with a carrying value of \$107.9 million and a loss on redemption of \$7.5 million.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Balance Sheet - Book Value Reconciliation

The following table reconciles our common stock book value for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 (in thousands, except per share data and amounts in footnotes):

| | For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | |
|---|--|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| | Total Amount | Per Share Amount | Total Amount | Per Share Amount |
| Common stock book value at beginning of period ⁽¹⁾ | \$434,224 | \$ 13.92 | \$447,634 | \$ 14.46 |
| Net income (loss) allocable to common shares | 6,152 | 0.20 | (6,430) | (0.21) |
| Change in other comprehensive income: | | | | |
| Available-for-sale securities | 1,607 | 0.05 | 315 | 0.01 |
| Derivatives | 455 | 0.02 | 1,604 | 0.05 |
| Common stock dividends | (3,122) | (0.10) | (4,682) | (0.15) |
| Common stock dividends on unvested shares | (43) | — | (66) | — |
| Accretion (dilution) from additional shares outstanding at June 30, 2018 ⁽²⁾ | 659 | — | 1,557 | (0.07) |
| Total net increase (decrease) | 5,708 | 0.17 | (7,702) | (0.37) |
| Common stock book value at end of period ⁽¹⁾⁽³⁾ | \$439,932 | \$ 14.09 | \$439,932 | \$ 14.09 |

Per share calculations exclude unvested restricted stock, as disclosed on our consolidated balance sheets, of 427,591, 465,808 and 483,073 shares at June 30, 2018, March 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. The denominator for the calculation is 31,229,829, 31,184,609 and 30,946,819 at June 30, 2018, March 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

⁽²⁾ Per share amount calculation includes the impact of 45,220 and 283,010 additional shares for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively.

⁽³⁾ Common stock book value is calculated as total stockholders' equity of \$555.9 million less preferred stock equity of \$116.0 million at June 30, 2018.

Common stock book value includes \$12.6 million of total discount resulting from the value of the conversion option on our convertible senior notes. The convertible senior notes' discounts will be amortized into interest expense over the remaining life of each note issuance. At June 30, 2018, common stock book value excluding this item would be \$427.4 million, which equates to \$13.68 per share.

Core Earnings

We use Core Earnings as a non-GAAP financial measure to evaluate our operating performance.

Core Earnings exclude the effects of certain transactions and accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") adjustments that we believe are not necessarily indicative of our current CRE loan portfolio and other CRE-related investments and operations. Core Earnings exclude income (loss) from all non-core assets such as commercial finance, middle market lending, residential mortgage lending, certain legacy CRE loans and other non-CRE assets designated as assets held for sale at the initial measurement date.⁽¹⁾

Core Earnings, for reporting purposes, is defined as GAAP net income (loss) allocable to common shareholders, excluding (i) non-cash equity compensation expense, (ii) unrealized gains and losses, (iii) non-cash provisions for loan losses, (iv) non-cash impairments on securities, (v) non-cash amortization of discounts or premiums associated with borrowings, (vi) net income or loss from a limited partnership interest owned at the initial measurement date, (vii) net income or loss from non-core assets,⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ (viii) real estate depreciation and amortization, (ix) foreign currency gains or losses and (x) income or loss from discontinued operations. Core Earnings may also be adjusted periodically to exclude certain one-time events pursuant to changes in GAAP and certain non-cash items.

Although pursuant to the Management Agreement we calculate incentive compensation using Core Earnings excluding incentive fees payable to the Manager, beginning with the three months and year ended December 31, 2017 we include incentive fees payable to the Manager in Core Earnings for reporting purposes.

Core Earnings does not represent net income or cash generated from operating activities and should not be considered as an alternative to GAAP net income or as a measure of liquidity under GAAP. Our methodology for calculating Core Earnings may differ from methodologies used by other companies to calculate similar supplemental performance measures, and, accordingly, our reported Core Earnings may not be comparable to similar performance measures used by other companies.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

85

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

The following table provides a reconciliation from GAAP net (loss) income allocable to common shares to Core Earnings allocable to common shares for the periods presented (in thousands, except per share data and amounts in footnotes):

| | For the Three Months Ended | | | | For the Six Months Ended | | | |
|---|----------------------------|----------------|-----------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| | June 30, | | June 30, | | June 30, | | June 30, | |
| | 2018 | Per Share Data | 2017 | Per Share Data | 2018 | Per Share Data | 2017 | Per Share Data |
| Net income (loss) allocable to common shares - GAAP | \$6,152 | \$0.20 | \$2,464 | \$0.08 | \$(6,430) | \$(0.21) | \$5,164 | \$0.17 |
| Adjustment for realized gain on CRE assets | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Net income (loss) allocable to common shares - GAAP, adjusted | 6,152 | 0.20 | 2,464 | 0.08 | (6,430) | (0.21) | 5,164 | 0.17 |
| Reconciling items from continuing operations: | | | | | | | | |
| Non-cash equity compensation expense | 659 | 0.02 | 734 | 0.02 | 1,626 | 0.05 | 1,522 | 0.05 |
| Non-cash (recovery of) provision for CRE loan losses | — | — | — | — | (799) | (0.03) | 860 | 0.03 |
| Litigation settlement expense ⁽⁴⁾ | — | — | — | — | (2,167) | (0.07) | — | — |
| Non-cash amortization of discounts or premiums associated with borrowings | 796 | 0.02 | 414 | 0.01 | 1,574 | 0.05 | 828 | 0.03 |
| Net loss from limited partnership interest owned at the initial measurement date ⁽¹⁾ | — | — | 728 | 0.02 | — | — | 370 | 0.01 |
| Income tax expense (benefit) from non-core investments ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ | 1 | — | — | — | (31) | — | 1,499 | 0.05 |
| Net realized gain on non-core assets ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ | (691) | (0.02) | (1,785) | (0.06) | (476) | (0.02) | (1,785) | (0.06) |
| Net loss (income) from non-core assets ⁽³⁾ | 50 | — | (2,840) | (0.09) | 447 | 0.01 | (4,269) | (0.14) |
| Reconciling items from discontinued operations and CRE assets: | | | | | | | | |
| Net interest income on legacy CRE loans | (339) | (0.01) | (981) | (0.03) | (661) | (0.02) | (2,305) | (0.07) |
| Realized gain on liquidation of legacy CRE loans | (1,000) | (0.03) | (5,608) | (0.18) | (1,000) | (0.03) | (12,562) | (0.41) |
| Operating expenses on legacy CRE loans | 187 | 0.01 | — | — | 187 | 0.01 | — | — |
| Fair value adjustments on legacy CRE loans | — | — | — | — | 4,672 | 0.15 | — | — |
| Net loss (income) from other non-CRE investments held for sale | 28 | — | (275) | (0.01) | 506 | 0.02 | (299) | (0.01) |
| Loss from discontinued operations, net of taxes | 450 | 0.01 | 4,184 | 0.14 | 203 | 0.01 | 4,745 | 0.15 |
| Core Earnings allocable to common shares ⁽⁵⁾ | \$6,293 | \$0.20 | \$(2,965) | \$(0.10) | \$(2,349) | \$(0.08) | \$(6,232) | \$(0.20) |
| Reconciling items for nonrecurring activities: | | | | | | | | |
| Loss on redemption of Series B Preferred Stock | — | — | — | — | 7,482 | 0.24 | — | — |
| Litigation settlement expense | — | — | — | — | 2,167 | 0.07 | — | — |
| Core Earnings allocable to common shares, adjusted | \$6,293 | \$0.20 | \$(2,965) | \$(0.10) | \$7,300 | \$0.23 | \$(6,232) | \$(0.20) |

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

| | | | | |
|---|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Weighted average common shares - diluted | 31,402 | 30,820 | 31,164 | 30,787 |
| Core Earnings per common share - diluted ⁽⁵⁾ | \$0.20 | \$(0.10) | \$(0.08) | \$(0.20) |
| Core Earnings per common share, adjusted - diluted | \$0.20 | \$(0.10) | \$0.23 | \$(0.20) |

(1) Initial measurement date is December 31, 2016.

(2) Income tax (benefit) expense from non-core investments and net realized loss on non-core assets are components of net income or loss from non-core assets.

(3) Non-core assets are investments and securities owned by us at the initial measurement date in (i) commercial finance, (ii) middle market lending, (iii) residential mortgage lending, (iv) legacy CRE loans designated as held for sale and (v) other non-CRE assets included in assets held for sale.

(4) Payment of pending settlement of a securities litigation, previously accrued in 2017.

(5) Core Earnings for the six months ended June 30, 2018 include a non-recurring charge of \$7.5 million, or \$(0.24) per common share-diluted, in connection with the redemption of Series B Preferred Stock.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

86

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Liquidity is a measurement of our ability to meet potential cash requirements, including ongoing commitments to pay dividends, fund investments, repay borrowings and other general business needs, including our management fee. Our ability to meet our on-going liquidity needs is subject to our ability to generate cash from operating activities and our ability to maintain and/or obtain additional debt financing and equity capital together with the funds referred to below. In November 2016, our Board approved the Plan, pursuant to which we are focused on making CRE debt investments going forward. The Plan includes disposing of certain non-core businesses and investments and underperforming legacy CRE loans, as well as maintaining a dividend policy based on sustainable earnings. As part of the Plan, the Identified Assets were reclassified as discontinued operations and/or assets held for sale during the fourth quarter of 2016. The following table delineates these disposable investments by business segment and details the current net book value of the businesses and investments included in the Plan (in millions):

| | Identified Assets at Plan Inception | Impairments/Adjustments on Non-Monetized Assets ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾ | Impairments/Adjustments on Monetized Assets ⁽¹⁾ | Monetized through June 30, 2018 ⁽³⁾ | Net Book Value at June 30, 2018 ⁽³⁾ |
|---|--|---|--|---|---|
| Discontinued operations and assets held for sale: | | | | | |
| Legacy CRE loans ⁽⁴⁾ | \$ 162.2 | \$ (11.5) | \$ (17.5) | \$(115.2) | \$ 18.0 |
| Middle market loans | 73.8 | — | (17.7) | (56.1) | — |
| Residential mortgage lending segment ⁽⁵⁾ | 56.6 | (2.2) | (9.6) | (43.7) | 1.1 |
| Other assets held for sale | 5.9 | — | 3.8 | (9.7) | — |
| Subtotal - discontinued operations and assets held for sale | \$ 298.5 | \$ (13.7) | \$ (41.0) | \$(224.7) | \$ 19.1 |
| Legacy CRE loans held for investment ⁽⁶⁾⁽⁷⁾ | 32.5 | — | — | (4.2) | 28.3 |
| Investments in unconsolidated entities | 86.6 | — | 38.3 | (124.7) | 0.2 |
| Commercial finance assets | 62.5 | — | 2.1 | (64.6) | — |
| Total | \$ 480.1 | \$ (13.7) | \$ (0.6) | \$(418.2) | \$ 47.6 |

(1) Reflects adjustments as a result of the designation as assets held for sale or discontinued operations, which occurred during the third and fourth quarters of 2016 except as noted in (2) below.

(2) The impairment adjustment to middle market loans includes \$5.4 million of fair value adjustments that occurred prior to the inception of the Plan.

(3) Middle market loans include a pro forma adjustment of \$2.1 million for proceeds received in July 2018.

(4) Legacy CRE loans includes \$88.2 million par value of loans at the inception of the Plan that were not reflected on the consolidated balance sheets until our investment in RREF CDO 2007-1 was liquidated in November 2016.

(5) Includes \$2.6 million of cash and cash equivalents not classified as assets held for sale in the residential mortgage lending segment at June 30, 2018.

(6) Legacy CRE loans with \$28.3 million of net book value were reclassified to CRE loans on the consolidated balance sheets at June 30, 2018 as it is now our intent to hold these loans to maturity.

(7) Legacy CRE loans held for investment includes \$30.0 million par value of loans at the inception of the Plan that were not reflected on the consolidated balance sheets until our investment in RREF CDO 2007-1 was liquidated in November 2016.

For the six months ended June 30, 2018, our principal sources of liquidity were: (i) net proceeds of \$273.7 million from additional financing, (ii) proceeds of \$90.6 million from repayments on our CRE loan portfolio, (iii) net proceeds of \$63.2 million from the close of a new CRE securitization, XAN 2018-RSO6, (iv) proceeds of \$27.6 million from the sale of middle market loans, (v) proceeds of \$12.0 million from the sale of a legacy CRE loan classified as an asset held for sale, (vi) proceeds of \$10.3 million from our CRE securitization that used repaid principal to invest in CRE loan future funding commitments, (vii) proceeds of \$10.2 million from our interest in

Pelium Capital, an equity method investment and (viii) proceeds of \$6.4 million from our investment in life settlement contracts. These sources of liquidity substantially provided the \$80.2 million of unrestricted cash we held at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

87

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

We utilize a variety of financing arrangements to finance certain assets. We generally utilize the following two types of financing arrangements:

Repurchase Agreements: Repurchase agreements effectively allow us to borrow against loans and securities that we own. Under these agreements, we sell our loans and securities to a counterparty and agree to repurchase the same loans and securities from the counterparty at a price equal to the original sales price plus interest. The counterparty retains the sole discretion over both whether to purchase the loan and security from us and, subject to certain conditions, the market value of such loan or security for purposes of determining whether we are required to pay 1. margin to the counterparty. Generally, if the lender determines (subject to certain conditions) that the market value of the collateral in a repurchase transaction has decreased by more than a defined minimum amount, we would be required to repay any amounts borrowed in excess of the product of (i) the revised market value multiplied by (ii) the applicable advance rate. During the term of a repurchase agreement, we receive the principal and interest on the related loans and securities and pay interest to the counterparty. At June 30, 2018, we have various repurchase agreements, as described below.

Securitizations: We seek non-recourse long-term financing from securitizations of our investments in CRE loans. The securitizations generally involve a senior portion of our loan, but may involve the entire loan. Securitization generally involves transferring notes to a special purpose vehicle (or the issuing entity), which then issues one or more classes of non-recourse notes pursuant to the terms of an indenture. The notes are secured by the pool of 2. assets. In exchange for the transfer of assets to the issuing entity, we receive cash proceeds from the sale of non-recourse notes. Securitizations of our portfolio investments might magnify our exposure to losses on those portfolio investments because the retained subordinate interest in any particular overall loan would be subordinate to the loan components sold and we would, therefore, absorb all losses sustained with respect to the overall loan before the owners of the senior notes experience any losses with respect to the loan in question.

In February 2012, we entered into the 2012 Facility with Wells Fargo to finance the origination of CRE loans. The facility has a maximum capacity of \$400.0 million. During the first quarter of 2018, we amended certain financial covenants within the facility and we are in full compliance with all covenants at June 30, 2018. In July 2018, we entered into the 2018 Facility, which extended the term of the facility to July 2020 and amended certain financial covenants within the facility. At June 30, 2018, we had \$92.5 million of borrowings outstanding with Wells Fargo secured by our CRE loans.

In September 2015, we entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement with Morgan Stanley to finance the origination of CRE loans. The facility has a maximum capacity of \$250.0 million and an initial three year term that expires in September 2018 with an annual one-year extension option through September 2019. During the first quarter of 2018, we amended certain financial covenants within the facility and we are in full compliance with all covenants at June 30, 2018. At June 30, 2018, we had \$67.9 million of borrowings outstanding with Morgan Stanley secured by our CRE loans.

In April 2018, we entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement with Barclays to finance the origination of CRE loans. The facility has a maximum capacity of \$250.0 million and an initial three year term that expires in April 2021, subject to certain one-year extension options in accordance with the facility's terms. At June 30, 2018, we did not have any outstanding borrowings with Barclays.

In March 2005, we entered into a master repurchase agreement (the "Deutsche Bank Agreement") with Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. to finance the purchase of CMBS. We had \$13.7 million of outstanding borrowings payable under the Deutsche Bank Agreement at June 30, 2018.

In November 2012, we entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement (the "JP Morgan Securities Agreement") with JP Morgan Securities LLC to finance the purchase of CMBS. In April 2017, we entered into the first amendment of the JP Morgan Securities Agreement which amended the minimum stockholders' equity of the guarantor and maximum leverage ratio covenants. We had \$13.8 million of outstanding borrowings payable under the JP Morgan Securities Agreement at June 30, 2018.

In August 2017, we entered into a master repurchase and securities agreement with RBC Capital Markets, LLC (the "RBC Securities Agreement") to finance the purchase of CMBS. We had \$156.6 million of outstanding borrowings payable under the RBC Securities Agreement at June 30, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

88

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Historically, we have financed the acquisition of our investments through CDOs and securitizations that essentially match the maturity and repricing dates of these financing vehicles with the maturities and repricing dates of our investments. We have in the past derived substantial operating cash from our equity investments in our CDOs and securitizations which, if the CDOs and securitizations fail to meet certain tests, will cease. Through June 30, 2018, we did not experience difficulty in maintaining our existing CDO and securitization financing and passed all of the critical tests required by these financings. We have called or substantially liquidated each of our remaining legacy CRE and commercial finance CDOs during 2016, which removes the requirement for us to maintain these tests going forward.

The following table sets forth the distributions received by us and coverage test summaries for our active securitizations for the periods presented (in thousands):

| Name | Cash Distributions | | Overcollateralization Cushion ⁽¹⁾ | | End of Designated Principal Reinvestment Period |
|---------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|---|
| | For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | For the Year Ended December 31, 2017 | At June 30, 2018 | At the Initial Measurement Date | |
| RCC 2015-CRE3 ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ | \$2,628 | \$ 8,672 | \$ 61,469 | \$ 20,313 | February 2017 |
| RCC 2015-CRE4 ⁽²⁾⁽⁴⁾ | \$3,820 | \$ 8,554 | \$ 86,099 | \$ 9,397 | September 2017 |
| RCC 2017-CRE5 ⁽²⁾ | \$14,865 | \$ 6,643 | \$ 28,177 | \$ 20,727 | July 2020 |
| XAN 2018-RSO6 ⁽²⁾ | \$— | \$ — | \$ 25,731 | \$ 25,731 | December 2020 |
| Apidos Cinco ⁽⁵⁾ | \$— | \$ 2,056 | N/A | \$ 17,774 | N/A |

(1) Overcollateralization cushion represents the amount by which the collateral held by the securitization issuer exceeds the maximum amount required.

The designated principal reinvestment period for RCC 2015-CRE3, RCC 2015-CRE4, RCC 2017-CRE5 and XAN 2018-RSO6 is the period in which principal repayments can be utilized to purchase loans held outside of the respective securitization that represent the funded commitments of existing collateral in the respective securitization that were not funded as of the date the respective securitization was closed. Additionally, the indenture for each securitization does not contain any interest coverage test provisions.

(3) In August 2018, we initiated the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE3.

(4) In July 2018, we exercised the optional redemption feature of RCC 2015-CRE4 and its remaining assets were measured at fair value and returned to us in exchange for our preference share and equity notes.

(5) Apidos Cinco CDO was substantially liquidated in November 2016.

The following table sets forth the distributions received by us and liquidation details for our liquidated securitizations for the periods presented (in thousands):

| Name | Cash Distributions For the Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | Liquidation Details | |
|------------------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| | | Liquidation Date | Remaining Assets at the Liquidation Date ⁽¹⁾ |
| RCC 2014-CRE2 ⁽²⁾ | \$— \$ 33,050 | August 2017 | \$ 92,980 |

(1) The remaining assets at the liquidation date were measured at fair value and returned to us in exchange for our preference share and equity notes in the respective securitization.

(2) Cash distributions for the year ended December 31, 2017 includes preference share and equity notes distributions at liquidation of \$25.6 million for RCC 2014-CRE2.

At July 31, 2018, our liquidity consisted of two primary sources:

•unrestricted cash and cash equivalents of \$50.0 million;

•approximately \$152.0 million of available liquidity from the financing of unlevered CRE and CMBS positions.

Our leverage ratio, defined as the ratio of borrowings to stockholders' equity may vary as a result of the various funding strategies we use. At June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, our leverage ratio was 2.4 times and 1.7 times, respectively. The leverage ratio increase was driven primarily by net additional borrowings combined with a decrease in stockholders' equity.

Distributions

We intend to continue to make regular quarterly distributions to holders of our common stock and preferred stock.

U.S. federal income tax law generally requires that a REIT distribute at least 90% of its REIT taxable income annually, determined without regard to the deduction for dividends paid and excluding net capital gains, and that it pay tax at regular corporate rates to the extent that it annually distributes less than 100% of its taxable income. Before we pay any dividend, whether for U.S. federal income tax purposes or otherwise, we must first meet both our operating and debt service requirements on our repurchase agreements and other debt payable. If our cash available for distribution is less than our taxable income, we could be required to sell assets or borrow funds to make cash distributions, or we may make a portion of the required distribution in the form of a taxable stock distribution or distribution of debt securities.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

89

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Contractual Obligations and Commitments

| | Contractual Commitments ⁽¹⁾ | | | | |
|---|---|---------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| | (dollars in thousands, except amounts in footnotes) | | | | |
| | Payments due by Period | | | | |
| | Total | Less than 1 Year | 1 - 3 Years | 3 - 5 Years | More than 5 Years |
| At June 30, 2018: | | | | | |
| CRE securitizations | \$632,004 | \$— | \$— | \$— | \$632,004 |
| Unsecured junior subordinated debentures ⁽²⁾ | 51,548 | — | — | — | 51,548 |
| 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes ⁽³⁾ | 128,643 | — | — | 128,643 | — |
| 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes ⁽⁴⁾ | 70,028 | 70,028 | — | — | — |
| 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes ⁽⁵⁾ | 20,830 | — | 20,830 | — | — |
| Repurchase and credit facilities ⁽⁶⁾ | 416,593 | 371,282 | 45,311 | — | — |
| Unfunded commitments on CRE loans ⁽⁷⁾ | 88,661 | 22,200 | 66,461 | — | — |
| Base management fees ⁽⁸⁾ | 9,794 | 9,794 | — | — | — |
| Total | \$1,418,101 | \$473,304 | \$132,602 | \$128,643 | \$683,552 |

(1) Contractual commitments on borrowings are presented net of deferred debt issuance costs and discounts.

(2) Contractual commitments exclude \$33.1 million and \$33.6 million of estimated interest expense payable through maturity, in June 2036 and October 2036, respectively, on our trust preferred securities.

(3) Contractual commitments exclude \$27.1 million of interest expense payable through maturity, in August 2022, on our 4.50% Convertible Senior Notes.

(4) Contractual commitments exclude \$1.8 million of interest expense payable through maturity, in December 2018, on our 6.00% Convertible Senior Notes.

(5) Contractual commitments exclude \$2.7 million of interest expense payable through maturity, in January 2020, on our 8.00% Convertible Senior Notes.

(6) Contractual commitments include \$1.2 million of accrued interest payable at June 30, 2018 on our repurchase facilities.

Unfunded commitments on our originated CRE whole loans generally fall into two categories: (i) pre-approved capital improvement projects and (ii) new or additional construction costs subject, in each case, to the borrower meeting specified criteria. Upon completion of the improvements or construction, we would receive additional interest income on the advanced amount. At June 30, 2018, we had unfunded commitments on 44 CRE whole loans.

(8) Base management fees presented are based on an estimate of base management fees payable to our manager over the next 12 months. Our management agreement also provides for an incentive fee arrangement that is based on operating performance. The incentive fee is not a fixed and determinable amount, and therefore it is not included in this table.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

General

At June 30, 2018, we did not maintain any relationships with unconsolidated entities or financial partnerships that were established for the purpose of facilitating off-balance sheet arrangements or contractually narrow or limited purposes, although we do have interests in unconsolidated entities not established for those purposes. Except as set forth below, at June 30, 2018, we had not guaranteed obligations of any unconsolidated entities or entered into any commitment or letter of intent to provide additional funding to any such entities.

Unfunded CRE Whole Loan Commitments

In the ordinary course of business, we make commitments to borrowers whose loans are in our CRE loan portfolio to provide additional loan funding in the future. Disbursement of funds pursuant to these commitments is subject to the borrower meeting pre-specified criteria. These commitments are subject to the same underwriting requirements and ongoing portfolio maintenance as are the on-balance sheet financial investments that we hold. Since these

commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements.

Guarantees and Indemnifications

In the ordinary course of business, we may provide guarantees and indemnifications that contingently obligate us to make payments to the guaranteed or indemnified party based on changes in the value of an asset, liability or equity security of the guaranteed or indemnified party. As such, we may be obligated to make payments to a guaranteed party based on another entity's failure to perform or achieve specified performance criteria, or we may have an indirect guarantee of the indebtedness of others.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

90

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

In May 2017, we received proceeds of \$16.2 million from the sale of our equity interest in Pearlmark Mezz, an unconsolidated entity. As part of our sale of Pearlmark Mezz, we entered into an indemnification agreement whereby we indemnified the purchaser against realized losses of up to \$4.3 million on the Kingsway mezzanine loan until the final maturity date in 2020. At June 30, 2018, we have a contingent liability, reported in accounts payable and other liabilities on our consolidated balance sheets, of \$703,000 outstanding as a reserve for probable losses on the indemnification. No additional reserve for probable losses was recorded during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

ITEM 3. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

At June 30, 2018, the primary component of our market risk was interest rate risk, as described below. While we do not seek to avoid risk completely, we do seek to assume risk that can be quantified from historical experience, to actively manage that risk, to earn sufficient compensation to justify assuming that risk and to maintain capital levels consistent with the risk we undertake or to which we are exposed.

Effect on Fair Value

A component of interest rate risk is the effect that changes in interest rates will have on the fair value of our assets. We face the risk that the fair value of our assets will increase or decrease at different rates than that of our liabilities, including our hedging instruments.

We primarily assess our interest rate risk by estimating the duration of our assets and the duration of our liabilities. Duration essentially measures the market price volatility of financial instruments as interest rates change. We generally calculate duration using various financial models and empirical data. Different models and methodologies can produce different duration numbers for the same securities.

The following sensitivity analysis table presents, at June 30, 2018, the estimated impact on the fair value of our interest rate-sensitive investments, instruments and liabilities of changes in interest rates, assuming rates instantaneously fall 100 basis points and rise 100 basis points (in thousands, except percentages):

| | June 30, 2018 | | |
|--|--|-----------|--|
| | Interest rates fall 100 basis points | Unchanged | Interest rates rise 100 basis points |
| Interest rate-sensitive investment securities: | | | |
| Fair value | \$117,119 | \$113,395 | \$110,664 |
| Change in fair value | \$3,724 | \$— | \$(2,731) |
| Change as a percent of fair value | 3.28 % | — | % (2.41)% |

Interest rate-sensitive hedging instruments:

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------|---------|---------|
| Fair value | \$(3,311) | \$2,206 | \$7,264 |
| Change in fair value | \$(5,517) | \$— | \$5,058 |
| Change as a percent of fair value | (250)% | — | % 229 % |

For purposes of the table, we have excluded our investments and liabilities with variable interest rates that are indexed to the London Interbank Offered Rate. Because the variable rates on these instruments are short-term in nature, we are not subject to material exposure from movements in fair value as a result of changes in interest rates.

It is important to note that the impact of changing interest rates on fair value can change significantly when interest rates change beyond 100 basis points from current levels. Therefore, the volatility in the fair value of our assets could increase significantly when interest rates change beyond 100 basis points from current levels. In addition, other factors impact the fair value of our interest rate-sensitive investment securities and hedging instruments, such as the shape of the yield curve, market expectations as to future interest rate changes and other market conditions. Accordingly, in the event of changes in actual interest rates, the change in the fair value of our assets would likely differ from that shown above and such difference might be material and adverse to our stockholders.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

Risk Management

To the extent consistent with maintaining our status as a real estate investment trust, we seek to manage our interest rate risk exposure to protect our variable rate debt against the effects of major interest rate changes. We generally seek to manage our interest rate risk by:

- monitoring and adjusting, if necessary, the reset index and interest rate related to our borrowings;
- attempting to structure our borrowing agreements for our commercial mortgage-backed securities to have a range of different maturities, terms, amortizations and interest rate adjustment periods; and
- using derivatives to adjust the interest rate sensitivity of our variable-rate borrowings, which we discuss in "Item 2. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations - Financial Condition - Hedging Instruments."

ITEM 4. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Disclosure Controls and Procedures

We maintain disclosure controls and procedures that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our Securities Exchange Act of 1934 reports is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission's rules and forms, and that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. In designing and evaluating the disclosure controls and procedures, our management recognized that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives, and our management necessarily was required to apply its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures.

Under the supervision of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, we have carried out an evaluation of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period covered by this report. Based upon that evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures are effective at the reasonable assurance level.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting during the quarter ended June 30, 2018 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

PART II

ITEM 1. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

We may become involved in litigation on various matters due to the nature of our business activities. The resolution of these matters may result in adverse judgments, fines, penalties, injunctions and other relief against us as well as monetary payments or other agreements and obligations. In addition, we may enter into settlements on certain matters in order to avoid the additional costs of engaging in litigation. Except as discussed below, we are unaware of any contingencies arising from such litigation that would require accrual or disclosure in the consolidated financial statements at June 30, 2018.

Open Litigation Matters

Six separate shareholder derivative suits (the "New York State Actions") purporting to assert claims on behalf of us were filed in the Supreme Court of New York on the following dates: December 2015 (the "Reaves Action"), February 2017 (the "Caito Action"), March 2017 (the "Simpson Action"), March 2017 (the "Heckel Action"), May 2017 (the "Schwartz Action"), and August 2017 (the "Greff Action"). Plaintiffs in the Schwartz Action and Greff Action made demands on our board of directors (the "Board") before filing suit, but plaintiffs in the Reaves Action, Caito Action, Simpson Action and Heckel Action did not. All of the shareholder derivative suits are substantially similar and allege that certain of our current and former officers and directors breached their fiduciary duties, wasted corporate assets and/or were unjustly enriched. Certain complaints assert additional claims against Exantas Capital Manager Inc. (the "Manager") (formerly known as Resource Capital Manager, Inc.) and Resource America, Inc. ("Resource America") for unjust enrichment based on allegations that our Manager received excessive management fees from us. In June 2017, the Court stayed the Reaves Action, Caito Action, Simpson Action and Heckel Action (collectively, the "New York State Demand Futile Actions") in favor of the federal shareholder derivative litigation described below. Our time to respond to the complaints in the Schwartz Action and Greff Action is presently stayed by stipulation of the parties. We believe that the plaintiffs in each of the New York State Actions lack standing to assert claims derivatively on our behalf, and we intend to seek the dismissal of any New York State Action as to which the stay is lifted.

Four separate shareholder derivative suits purporting to assert claims on behalf of us were filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York (the "Court") on the following dates by shareholders who declined to make a demand on the Board prior to filing suit: January 2017 (the "Greenberg Action"), January 2017 (the "Canoles Action"), January 2017 (the "DeCaro Action") and April 2017 (the "Gehan Action"). In May 2017, the Court consolidated the Greenberg Action, Canoles Action, DeCaro Action and Gehan Action as the "Federal Demand Futile Actions" and, in July 2017, appointed lead counsel and directed that a consolidated complaint be filed. Following consolidation, the plaintiffs in the Canoles Action and Gehan Action voluntarily dismissed their suits. The consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Futile Actions, filed in August 2017, alleged claims for breach of fiduciary duty, corporate waste, unjust enrichment and violations of Section 14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. In April 2018, the consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Futile Actions was dismissed, but such dismissal is currently on appeal.

Three additional shareholder derivative suits purporting to assert claims on behalf of us were filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York on the following dates by shareholders who served demands on the Board to bring litigation and allege that their demands were wrongfully refused: February 2017 (the "McKinney Action"), March 2017 (the "Sherek/Speigel Action") and April 2017 (the "Sebenoler Action"). In May 2017, the Court consolidated the McKinney Action, Sherek/Speigel Action and Sebenoler Action as the "Federal Demand Refused Actions." A consolidated complaint was filed on June 30, 2017, alleging claims for breach of fiduciary duty, unjust enrichment and violations of Section 14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act. The consolidated complaint in the Federal Demand Refused Actions was dismissed in February 2018 but such dismissal is currently on appeal.

In August 2017, Robert Canoles filed a shareholder derivative suit in Maryland Circuit Court against certain of our current and former officers and directors, as well as our Manager and Resource America (the "Canoles Action"). Mr. Canoles had previously filed his suit in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, but voluntarily dismissed that action after the Court declined to appoint his counsel as lead counsel in the Federal Demand Futile Actions. The complaint in the Canoles Action, as amended in October 2017, asserts a variety of claims,

including claims for breach of fiduciary duty, unjust enrichment and corporate waste, which are based on allegations substantially similar to those at issue in the Federal Demand Futile Actions. The Canoles Action was stayed by the Maryland Circuit Court in favor of the federal shareholder litigation described above. We believe that Canoles lacks standing to assert claims derivatively on our behalf and intend to seek the dismissal of the Canoles Action on that basis if the stay is lifted.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

93

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

In September 2017, Michael Hafkey filed a shareholder derivative suit in the United States District Court for the District of Maryland against certain of our former officers and directors and our Manager (the "Hafkey Action"). The complaint asserts a breach of fiduciary duty claim that is substantially similar to the claims at issue in the Federal Demand Refused Actions. Mr. Hafkey previously made a demand on the Board to investigate this claim, which was ultimately denied. We believe that Hafkey's claim that his demand to bring litigation was wrongfully refused is without merit and that Hafkey consequently lacks standing to assert claims derivatively on our behalf. We filed a motion to stay the Hafkey Action in favor of the duplicative Federal Demand Futile Actions, which is pending. In April 2018, we funded \$2.0 million into escrow in connection with the proposed settlement of outstanding litigation. We did not have any general litigation reserve at June 30, 2018, and we had a general litigation reserve of \$2.2 million, including estimated legal costs, at December 31, 2017.

Primary Capital Mortgage, LLC ("PCM") is subject to litigation related to claims for repurchases or indemnifications on loans that PCM has sold to third parties. At June 30, 2018, no such litigation demand was outstanding. At December 31, 2017, such litigation demands totaled approximately \$6.5 million. Reserves for such litigation demands are included in the reserve for mortgage repurchases and indemnifications that totaled \$1.7 million and \$5.7 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. The reserves for mortgage repurchases and indemnifications are included in liabilities held for sale on the consolidated balance sheets.

Settled Litigation Matters

PCM was the subject of a lawsuit brought by a purchaser of residential mortgage loans alleging breaches of representations and warranties made on loans sold to the purchaser. The asserted repurchase claims related to loans sold to the purchaser that were subsequently sold by the purchaser to either the Federal National Mortgage Association or Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation and loans sold to the purchaser that were subsequently securitized and sold as residential mortgage-backed securities ("RMBS") by the purchaser to RMBS investors. This matter was settled on January 8, 2018.

On November 22, 2017, the Plaintiff's motion for class certification was granted in *Levin v. Resource Capital Corp.* (the "Levin Action"), a previously disclosed securities litigation against us and certain of our current and former officers that was pending in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. On February 5, 2018, we entered into a stipulation and agreement of settlement (the "Settlement Agreement"), which received final approval from the Court on August 3, 2018. The Settlement Agreement settled all claims asserted in the action on behalf of the certified class (the "Settlement"), which consisted, with specified exceptions, of all persons who purchased our common stock, 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock or 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock between October 31, 2012 and August 5, 2015. Under the terms of the Settlement Agreement, which has been filed publicly with the Court, a payment of \$9.5 million has been made to settle the litigation. The settlement payment was funded principally by insurance coverage, and we do not anticipate that the Settlement will have a material adverse impact on our financial condition. In exchange for the settlement consideration, we and the individual defendants in the Levin Action (and certain related parties) have been released from all claims that have been or could have been asserted in the case by class members (and certain related parties), excluding one holder of less than 500 shares who opted out of the Settlement. The terms of the Settlement and release of claims are described in greater detail in the Settlement Agreement filed with the Court and the Final Judgment and Order of Dismissal with Prejudice entered by the Court on August 3, 2018. The Settlement Agreement contains no admission of misconduct by us or any of the individual defendants and expressly acknowledges that we and the individual defendants deny all allegations of wrongdoing and maintain that we and they have at all times acted in good faith and in compliance with the law.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

RISKS RELATED TO REAL ESTATE INVESTMENTS

Our investments in preferred equity involve a greater risk of loss than traditional debt financing.

We may make preferred equity investments in entities that own or acquire commercial real estate properties. Preferred equity investments involve a higher degree of risk than first mortgage loans due to a variety of factors, including the risk that, similar to mezzanine loans, such investments are subordinate to first mortgage loans and are not collateralized by property underlying the investment. Unlike mezzanine loans, preferred equity investments generally do not have a pledge of the ownership interests of the entity that owns the interest in the entity owning the property. Although as a holder of preferred equity we may enhance our position with covenants that limit the activities of the entity in which we hold an interest and protect our equity by obtaining an exclusive right to control the underlying property after an event of default, should such a default occur on our investment, we would only be able to proceed against the entity in which we hold an interest, and not the property owned by such entity and underlying our investment. As a result, we may not recover some or all of our investment.

ITEM 6. EXHIBITS

| Exhibit No. | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 2.1 | <u>Asset Purchase Agreement, dated June 6, 2017, by and among Stearns Lending, LLC, Primary Capital Mortgage, LLC, and Resource Capital Corp. (34)</u> |
| 3.1(a) | <u>Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Resource Capital Corp. (1)</u> |
| 3.1(b) | <u>Articles of Amendment to Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Resource Capital Corp. (29)</u> |
| 3.1(c) | <u>Articles Supplementary 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (16)</u> |
| 3.1(d) | <u>Articles Supplementary 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (17)</u> |
| 3.1(e) | <u>Articles Supplementary 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (18)</u> |
| 3.1(f) | <u>Articles Supplementary 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (22)</u> |
| 3.1(g) | <u>Articles Supplementary 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (9)</u> |
| 3.1(h) | <u>Articles of Amendment, effective May 25, 2018. (41)</u> |
| 3.2 | <u>Second Amended and Restated Bylaws of Exantas Capital Corp. (41)</u> |
| 4.1(a) | <u>Form of Certificate for Common Stock for Resource Capital Corp. (1)</u> |
| 4.1(b) | <u>Form of Certificate for 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (13)</u> |
| 4.1(c) | <u>Form of Certificate for 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock (18)</u> |
| 4.1(d) | <u>Form of Certificate for 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock. (9)</u> |
| 4.2(a) | <u>Junior Subordinated Indenture between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., dated May 25, 2006. (2)</u> |
| 4.2(b) | <u>Amendment to Junior Subordinated Indenture and Junior Subordinated Note due 2036 between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., dated October 26, 2009 and effective September 30, 2009. (6)</u> |
| 4.3(a) | <u>Amended and Restated Trust Agreement among Resource Capital Corp., Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., Wells Fargo Delaware Trust Company and the Administrative Trustees named therein, dated May 25, 2006. (2)</u> |
| 4.3(b) | <u>Amendment to Amended and Restated Trust Agreement and Preferred Securities Certificate among Resource Capital Corp., Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. and the Administrative Trustees named therein, dated October 26, 2009 and effective September 30, 2009. (6)</u> |
| 4.4 | <u>Junior Subordinated Note due 2036 in the principal amount of \$25,774,000, dated October 26, 2009. (6)</u> |
| 4.5(a) | <u>Junior Subordinated Indenture between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., dated September 29, 2006. (3)</u> |
| 4.5(b) | <u>Amendment to Junior Subordinated Indenture and Junior Subordinated Note due 2036 between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., dated October 26, 2009 and effective September 30, 2009. (6)</u> |
| 4.6(a) | <u>Amended and Restated Trust Agreement among Resource Capital Corp., Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., Wells Fargo Delaware Trust Company and the Administrative Trustees named therein, dated September 29, 2006. (3)</u> |
| 4.6(b) | |

Amendment to Amended and Restated Trust Agreement and Preferred Securities Certificate among Resource Capital Corp., Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. and the Administrative Trustees named therein, dated October 26, 2009 and effective September 30, 2009. (6)

- 4.7 Junior Subordinated Note due 2036 in the principal amount of \$25,774,000, dated October 26, 2009. (6)
- 4.8(a) Senior Indenture between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Trustee, dated October 21, 2013. (25)
- 4.8(b) First Supplemental Indenture between the Company and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Trustee (including the form of 6.00% Convertible Senior Note due 2018). (25)
- 4.8(c) Form of 6.00% Convertible Senior Note due 2018 (included in Exhibit 4.8(b)).

(Back to Index)

(Back to Index)

- 4.8(d) Second Supplemental Indenture, dated January 13, 2015, between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Trustee (including the form of 8.00% Convertible Senior Note due 2020). (20)
- 4.8(e) Form of 8.00% Convertible Senior Note due 2020 (included in Exhibit 4.8(d)).
- 4.8(f) Third Supplemental Indenture, dated August 16, 2017, between Resource Capital Corp. and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Trustee (including the form of 4.50% Convertible Senior Note due 2022). (36)
- 4.8(g) Form of 4.50% Convertible Senior Note due 2022 (included in Exhibit 4.8(f)).
- 10.1 Third Amended and Restated Management Agreement between Resource Capital Corp., Resource Capital Manager, Inc. and Resource America, Inc. dated as of December 4, 2017. (38)
- 10.2(a) 2005 Stock Incentive Plan. (1)
- 10.2(b) Form of Stock Award Agreement. (8)
- 10.2(c) Form of Stock Option Agreement. (8)
- 10.3(a) Amended and Restated Omnibus Equity Compensation Plan. (7)
- 10.3(b) Form of Stock Award Agreement. (27)
- 10.3(c) Form of Stock Award Agreement (for employees with Resource America, Inc. employment agreements). (27)
- 10.4 Services Agreement between Resource Capital Asset Management, LLC and Apidos Capital Management, LLC, dated February 24, 2011. (11)
- 10.5 8.50% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, 8.25% Series B Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, 8.625% Fixed-to-Floating Series C Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock At-the-Market Issuance Sales Agreement, dated November 19, 2014 among the Company, Resource Capital Manager Inc. and MLV & Co., LLC. (26)
- 10.6 Letter Agreement between Resource Capital Corp. and Resource America, Inc. (31)
- 10.7 Membership Interest Purchase Agreement, dated as of August 1, 2016, by and among CVC Credit Partners U.S. Lending I, L.P., Collier International Partners VII, L.P., Collier International Partners VII Parallel Fund, L.P. and Collier International Partners VII Luxembourg, SLP (solely with respect to Section 6.7 thereof), NEW NP, LLC, and Resource Capital Corp. (solely with respect to Section 6.8 thereof)).(32)
- 10.8 Form of Indemnification Agreement. (35)
- 10.9 Exchange Agreement, dated August 10, 2017, by and between Resource Capital Corp., Oaktree Real Estate Debt Holdings Ltd., INVESTIN PRO RED HOLDINGS, LLC, and Oaktree TSE-16 Real Estate Debt, LLC. (36)
- 12.1 Statements re Computation of Ratios.
- 31.1 Rule 13a-14(a)/Rule 15d-14(a) Certification of Chief Executive Officer.
- 31.2 Rule 13a-14(a)/Rule 15d-14(a) Certification of Chief Financial Officer.
- 32.1 Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350.
- 32.2 Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350.
- 99.1(a) Amended and Restated Master Repurchase and Securities Contract by and between RCC Real Estate SPE 4, LLC, as Seller, and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Buyer, dated as of July 19, 2018. (12)
- 99.1(b) Amended and Restated Guaranty Agreement made by Exantas Capital Corp., as guarantor, and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, dated as of July 19, 2018 (12)
- 99.2(a) Master Repurchase and Securities Contract Agreement between RCC Real Estate 6, LLC and Morgan Stanley Bank, NA, dated as of September 10, 2015. (30)
- 99.2(b) Guaranty dated as of September 10, 2015, made by Resource Capital Corp., as guarantor, in favor of Morgan Stanley Bank, N.A. (30)
- 99.3(a) Master Repurchase Agreement between RCC Real Estate SPE 7, LLC and Barclays Bank PLC, dated as of April 10, 2018. (40)
- 99.3(b) Guaranty dated as of April 10, 2018, made by Resource Capital Corp., as guarantor, in favor of Barclays Bank PLC. (40)
- 99.4 Agreement and Plan of Merger dated as of May 22, 2016 by and among Resource America, Inc., C-III Capital Partners LLC, and Regent Acquisition Inc. (included as Exhibit A to the Letter Agreement referred in Exhibit 10.7) (31)

99.5 [Federal Income Tax Consequences of our Qualification as a REIT. \(33\)](#)

101 [Interactive Data Files.](#)

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

96

(Back to Index)

- (1) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's registration statement on Form S-11, Registration No. 333-126517.
- (2) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2006.
- (3) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2006.
- (4) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2013.
- (5) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 26, 2014.
- (6) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2009.
- (7) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Proxy Statement filed on April 16, 2014.
- (8) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-11 (File No. 333-132836).
- (9) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on June 9, 2014.
- (10) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2010.
- (11) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on March 2, 2011.
- (12) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 25, 2018.
- (13) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012 filed on March 18, 2013.
- (14) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on March 2, 2012.
- (15) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 13, 2012.
- (16) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's registration statement on Form 8-A filed on June 8, 2012.
- (17) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 29, 2012.
- (18) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on September 28, 2012.
- (19) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on September 23, 2014.
- (20) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 13, 2015.
- (21) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 1, 2012.
- (22) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company Current Report on Form 8-K filed on November 20, 2012.
- (23) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 8, 2013.
- (24) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 25, 2013.
- (25) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 21, 2013.
- (26) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on November 20, 2014.
- (27) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2014.
- (28) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2015.
- (29) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on September 1, 2015.
- (30) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on September 16, 2015.
- (31) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2016.
- (32) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 5, 2016.
- (33) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016.
- (34) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 8, 2017.
- (35) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2017.
- (36) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 16, 2017.

Edgar Filing: Exantas Capital Corp. - Form 10-Q

- (37) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2016.
- (38) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 18, 2017.
- (39) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2017.
- (40) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 12, 2018.
- (41) Filed previously as an exhibit to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 25, 2018.

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

97

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

EXANTAS CAPITAL CORP.

(Registrant)

August 7, 2018 By: /s/ Robert C. Lieber
Robert C. Lieber
Chief Executive Officer

August 7, 2018 By: /s/ David J. Bryant
David J. Bryant
Senior Vice President
Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer

August 7, 2018 By: /s/ Eldron C. Blackwell
Eldron C. Blackwell
Vice President
Chief Accounting Officer

[\(Back to Index\)](#)

98